



M020/M021 SERVICE MANUAL

LANIER RICOH SƏVIN

It is the reader's responsibility when discussing the information contained within this document to maintain a level of confidentiality that is in the best interest of Ricoh Americas Corporation and its member companies.

NO PART OF THIS DOCUMENT MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY FASHION AND DISTRIBUTED WITHOUT THE PRIOR PERMISSION OF RICOH AMERICAS CORPORATION.

All product names, domain names or product illustrations, including desktop images, used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks or the property of their respective companies.

They are used throughout this book in an informational or editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such use, or the use of any trade name, or web site is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with Ricoh products.

© 2011 RICOH Americas Corporation. All rights reserved.

WARNING

The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Americas Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.

Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.

Ricoh Americas Corporation

LEGEND

| PRODUCT | COMPANY | | |
|---------|-----------------|------------------|----------|
| CODE | LANIER RICOH SA | | SAVIN |
| M020 | SP5200DN | Aficio SP 5200DN | SP5200DN |
| M021 | SP5210DN | Aficio SP 5210DN | SP5210DN |

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

| REV. NO. | DATE | COMMENTS |
|----------|---------|-------------------|
| * | 11/2011 | Original Printing |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

M020/M021

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| 1. PRODUCT INFORMATION | ·1 |
|--|----|
| 1.1 SPECIFICATIONS 1- | -1 |
| 1.2 MACHINE CONFIGURATION1- | -2 |
| 1.2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS 1- | -2 |
| Main1- | -2 |
| Options1- | -2 |
| Internal options1- | -4 |
| 1.3 OVERVIEW | -5 |
| 1.3.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT1- | -5 |
| 1.3.2 PAPER PATH 1- | -7 |
| 2. INSTALLATION | ·1 |
| 2.1 MACHINE INSTALLATION | -1 |
| 2.2 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS | |
| 2.2.1 ENVIRONMENT | -2 |
| 2.2.2 MACHINE LEVEL | -2 |
| 2.2.3 MINIMUM OPERATIONAL SPACE REQUIREMENTS | -3 |
| 2.2.4 POWER SUPPLY 2- | -3 |
| 2.3 CONTROLLER OPTIONS | -4 |
| 2.3.1 OVERVIEW | -4 |
| I/F Card Slots2- | -4 |
| SD Card Slots2- | -4 |
| SDRAM slot2- | -4 |
| Hard disk connector2- | -4 |
| 2.3.2 INSTALLING THE SD MEMORY CARD OPTIONS | -5 |
| Installation2- | -5 |
| 2.3.3 SD CARD APPLICATION MOVE 2- | -7 |
| Overview | -7 |
| Move Exec 2- | -8 |
| Undo Exec 2- | -8 |
| 2.3.4 IEEE 802.11 A/G (WIRELESS LAN) 2- | -9 |
| Installation Procedure2- | -9 |

i

| | UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN | 2-10 |
|----|--|---|
| | SP Mode and UP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g Wireless LAN. | |
| | 2.3.5 IEEE 1284 INTERFACE BOARD | |
| | 2.3.6 GIGABIT ETHERNET | 2-15 |
| | 2.3.7 MEMORY UNIT TYPE G 256MB / I 512MB (ONLY FOR M020) | 2-17 |
| | 2.3.8 HARD DISK DRIVE TYPE 2670 (ONLY FOR M020) | |
| | 2.3.9 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS | 2-21 |
| | 2.3.10 IC CARD READER (EXTERNAL OPTIONS) ATTACHING | |
| | LOCATION | 2-21 |
| | 2.4 PAPER FEED UNIT TK1120 (M386) | 2-22 |
| | 2.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 2-22 |
| | 2.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 2-22 |
| | 2.4.3 WHEN STACKING FOUR OPTIONAL PAPER FEED UNITS | 2-25 |
| | Fixing the units together | 2-26 |
| | 2.5 PAPER FEED UNIT TK1130 (M389) | 2-27 |
| | 2.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK | 2-27 |
| | 2.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE | 2-27 |
| | 2.5.3 WHEN STACKING FOUR OPTIONAL PAPER FEED UNITS | 2-30 |
| | Fixing the units together | 2-31 |
| | | |
| 2 | | 2_1 |
| 3. | . PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE | |
| 3. | 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES | 3-1 |
| 3. | 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE. | 3-1 3-1 |
| 3. | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE | 3-1 3-1 3-1 |
| 3. | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS | 3-1 3-1 3-1 3-2 |
| 3. | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS | 3-1 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 |
| 3. | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE. 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES | 3-1 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 |
| 3. | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS | 3-1 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE. 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES | 3-1 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE. 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES. 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE. 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE. 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS. 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS. 3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS. 3.2.3 OPERATION CHECK. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4.1 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS. | 3-1 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 . 4-1 4-1 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE. 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES. 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE. 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE. 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS. 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS. 3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS . 3.2.3 OPERATION CHECK. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT | 3-1 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 . 4-1 4-1 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE. 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES. 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE. 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE. 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS. 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS. 3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS. 3.2.3 OPERATION CHECK. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4.1 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS. | 3-1 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 . 4-1 4-1 4-1 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE. 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES. 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE. 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE. 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS. 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS. 3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS. 3.2.3 OPERATION CHECK. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4.1 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS. 4.1.1 PRECAUTIONS ON DISASSEMBLY. | 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 . 4-1 4-1 4-2 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE | 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 4-1 4-1 4-2 4-2 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE. 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES. 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE. 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE. 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS. 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS. 3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS. 3.2.3 OPERATION CHECK. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4.1 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS. 4.1.1 PRECAUTIONS ON DISASSEMBLY 4.1.2 RELEASING PLASTIC LATCHES. 4.1.3 AFTER SERVICING THE MACHINE. | 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 4-1 4-1 4-1 4-2 4-2 4-3 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE. 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES. 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE. 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE. 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS. 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS. 3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS. 3.2.3 OPERATION CHECK. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4.1 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS. 4.1.1 PRECAUTIONS ON DISASSEMBLY 4.1.2 RELEASING PLASTIC LATCHES. 4.1.3 AFTER SERVICING THE MACHINE. | 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 4-1 4-1 4-1 4-2 4-2 4-3 4-3 4-3 |
| | PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE 3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES 3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE 3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE 3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS 3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS 3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS 3.2.3 OPERATION CHECK REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT 4.1 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS 4.1.1 PRECAUTIONS ON DISASSEMBLY 4.1.2 RELEASING PLASTIC LATCHES 4.1.3 AFTER SERVICING THE MACHINE 4.2 COVERS 4.2.1 RIGHT COVER | 3-1 3-1 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 3-2 4-1 4-1 4-1 4-2 4-2 4-3 4-3 4-5 |

| 4.2.5 REAR COVER | 4-9 |
|---|------|
| 4.2.6 OPERATION PANEL | 4-10 |
| 4.3 LASER UNIT | 4-11 |
| 4.3.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS | 4-11 |
| 4.3.2 LASER UNIT | 4-12 |
| 4.3.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR | 4-14 |
| 4.3.4 LASER SYNCHRONIZATION DETECTOR | 4-15 |
| 4.4 TRANSFER ROLLER | 4-16 |
| 4.5 FUSING | 4-17 |
| 4.5.1 FUSING UNIT | 4-17 |
| 4.5.2 HOT ROLLER AND PRESSURE ROLLER SECTIONS | 4-18 |
| 4.5.3 FUSING LAMP | 4-19 |
| 4.5.4 HOT ROLLER | 4-20 |
| 4.5.5 FUSING THERMISTOR | 4-21 |
| 4.5.6 THERMOSTATS | 4-21 |
| 4.5.7 PRESSURE ROLLER | 4-22 |
| 4.5.8 FUSING CLEANING ROLLER | 4-23 |
| 4.6 PAPER FEED | 4-24 |
| 4.6.1 PAPER FEED ROLLER | 4-24 |
| 4.6.2 FRICTION PAD | 4-24 |
| 4.6.3 PAPER END SENSOR | 4-27 |
| 4.6.4 REMAINING PAPER SENSORS 1 AND 2 | 4-29 |
| 4.6.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR | 4-31 |
| 4.7 BY-PASS TRAY | 4-32 |
| 4.7.1 BY-PASS TRAY UNIT | 4-32 |
| 4.7.2 BY-PASS FEED ROLLER | 4-33 |
| 4.7.3 BY-PASS FRICTION PAD | 4-34 |
| 4.7.4 BY-PASS PAPER SENSOR | 4-35 |
| 4.8 DUPLEX | 4-36 |
| 4.8.1 DUPLEX UNIT | 4-36 |
| 4.8.2 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR | 4-37 |
| 4.8.3 DUPLEX RELAY SENSOR | 4-38 |
| 4.9 PAPER EXIT | 4-40 |
| 4.9.1 PAPER OVERFLOW SENSOR | 4-40 |
| 4.9.2 PAPER EXIT SENSOR | 4-41 |
| 4.10 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS | 4-43 |
| 4.10.1 CONTROLLER BOARD | 4-43 |
| 4.10.2 CONTROLLER BOX | 4-44 |

| 4.10.3 | PSU AND PSU COVER | . 4-45 |
|----------|---|--------|
| 4.10.4 | ENGINE BOARD | . 4-47 |
| Whe | en installing a new engine board | . 4-48 |
| 4.10.5 | ENGINE BOARD BRACKET | . 4-49 |
| 4.10.6 | ENGINE BOARD WITH BRACKET | . 4-50 |
| 4.10.7 | RFID (RADIO FREQUENCY ID) | . 4-51 |
| 4.10.8 | HVPS (HIGH VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY) | . 4-52 |
| | OPERATION PANEL UNIT | |
| Key | board Unit | . 4-52 |
| Ope | eration panel controller and LCD unit | . 4-54 |
| 4.10.10 | NVRAM AND EEPROM | . 4-55 |
| NVE | RAMs | . 4-55 |
| EEF | PROM | . 4-56 |
| 4.11 SW | ITCHES | . 4-57 |
| 4.11.1 | TRAY SET SWITCH AND PAPER SIZE DETECTION SENSOR | २ |
| BOARE | 04-57 | |
| 4.11.2 | REAR-LEFT INTERLOCK SWITCH | . 4-58 |
| 4.11.3 | REAR-RIGHT INTERLOCK SWITCH | . 4-59 |
| 4.11.4 | FRONT INTERLOCK SWITCH | . 4-60 |
| 4.12 CLU | JTCHES | . 4-61 |
| 4.12.1 | OVERVIEW | . 4-61 |
| 4.12.2 | REGISTRATION CLUTCH | . 4-62 |
| 4.12.3 | RELAY CLUTCH | . 4-62 |
| 4.12.4 | BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH | . 4-63 |
| 4.12.5 | PAPER FEED CLUTCH | . 4-63 |
| 4.13 FAN | ۱S | . 4-64 |
| 4.13.1 | OVERVIEW | . 4-64 |
| 4.13.2 | AIO FAN | . 4-65 |
| 4.13.3 | EXHAUST FAN | . 4-65 |
| 4.13.4 | PSU FAN | . 4-66 |
| 4.13.5 | TRANSFER THERMISTOR | . 4-66 |
| 4.14 OTH | HER ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS | . 4-67 |
| 4.14.1 | HDD (OPTION FOR M020) | . 4-67 |
| 4.14.2 | DIMM (OPTION FOR M020) | . 4-68 |
| 4.14.3 | DUPLEX JUNCTION SOLENOID | . 4-69 |
| 4.14.4 | TONER END SENSOR | . 4-70 |
| 4.15 DRI | VE SECTION | . 4-71 |
| 4.15.1 | OVERVIEW | . 4-71 |

| | 4.15.2 | MAIN MOTOR GEAR ASSY | |
|------|-----------|---------------------------|---------|
| | 4.15.3 | MAIN MOTOR | |
| | 4.15.4 | PAPER EXIT MOTOR | |
| | 4.15.5 | DUPLEX MOTOR | |
| 5. 3 | SYSTEM | MAINTENANCE REFEREN | ICE5-1 |
| 5. | 1 PRINTE | ER SERVICE MODE | |
| | 5.1.1 S | P1-XXX (SERVICE MODE) | |
| 5. | 2 ENGIN | E SERVICE MODE | 5-10 |
| | 5.2.1 E | NGINE MODE TABLE | |
| | SP1 | -xxx: Feed | |
| | SP2 | 2-xxx: Drum | |
| | SP3 | 3-xxx: Process | |
| | SP5 | 5-xxx: Mode | |
| | SP7 | 7-xxx: Data Log | |
| | SP8 | 3XXX: Data Log 2 | |
| 5. | 3 FIRMW | ARE UPDATE | |
| | 5.3.1 T | YPE OF FIRMWARE | |
| | 5.3.2 P | RECAUTIONS | |
| | Har | ndling SD Cards | |
| | Uplo | oad/Download | |
| | Net | work Connection | |
| | 5.3.3 M | ACHINE FIRMWARE UPDATE | |
| 5. | 4 NVRAN | I DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD | |
| | 5.4.1 U | PLOADING NVRAM DATA | |
| | 5.4.2 D | OWNLOADING NVRAM DATA | |
| 5. | 5 SD CAI | RD APPLICATION MOVE | |
| | 5.5.1 O | VERVIEW | |
| | 5.5.2 M | IOVE EXEC | |
| | 5.5.3 U | NDO EXEC | |
| 5. | 6 MENU | MODE | |
| 5. | 7 CONTF | ROLLER BOARD DIP SWITCHES | 5 5-115 |
| 5. | 8 CARD \$ | SAVE FUNCTION | |
| | 5.8.1 O | VERVIEW | |
| | Car | d Save: | |
| | 5.8.2 P | ROCEDURE | |
| 6. 1 | FROUBL | ESHOOTING | 6-1 |
| 6. | 1 SERVIO | CE CALL CONDITIONS | |

| 6.1.1 SUMMARY | 6-1 |
|---|---|
| 6.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS | 6-2 |
| 6.2 ERROR MESSAGES | 6-32 |
| 6.2.1 COMMON ERROR MESSAGES | 6-32 |
| 6.3 JAM DETECTION | 6-37 |
| 6.3.1 PAPER JAM DISPLAY | 6-37 |
| 6.3.2 PAPER JAM SENSORS | 6-37 |
| 6.3.3 JAM CODES AND DISPLAY CODES | 6-38 |
| 6.3.4 INITIAL JAM RELATIONS | 6-40 |
| 6.4 GENERAL TROUBLESHOOTING | 6-41 |
| 6.4.1 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT | 6-41 |
| Registration Adjustment | 6-41 |
| Parallelogram Image Adjustment | 6-41 |
| 6.4.2 SKEW ADJUSTMENT | 6-42 |
| | |
| 6.4.3 STREAKS IN THE SUB SCAN DIRECTION | 6-42 |
| 6.4.3 STREAKS IN THE SUB SCAN DIRECTION | |
| | 7-1 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING | 7-1 7-1 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING | 7-1 7-1 7-1 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING 7.1 ENERGY SAVE 7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES | 7-1 7-1 7-1 7-2 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING 7.1 ENERGY SAVE 7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES Timer Settings | 7-1 7-1 7-1 7-2 7-2 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING 7.1 ENERGY SAVE 7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES Timer Settings Return to Stand-by Mode | 7-1 7-1 7-1 7-2 7-2 7-2 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING 7.1 ENERGY SAVE 7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES Timer Settings Return to Stand-by Mode Recommendation | 7-1 7-1 7-1 7-2 7-2 7-2 7-3 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING 7.1 ENERGY SAVE 7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES Timer Settings Return to Stand-by Mode Recommendation 7.1.2 ENERGY SAVE EFFECTIVENESS | 7-1 7-1 7-1 7-2 7-2 7-2 7-3 7-5 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING 7.1 ENERGY SAVE 7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES Timer Settings Return to Stand-by Mode Recommendation 7.1.2 ENERGY SAVE EFFECTIVENESS 7.2 PAPER SAVE | 7-1 7-1 7-1 7-2 7-2 7-2 7-3 7-5 7-5 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING 7.1 ENERGY SAVE 7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES Timer Settings Return to Stand-by Mode Recommendation 7.1.2 ENERGY SAVE EFFECTIVENESS 7.2 PAPER SAVE 7.2.1 EFFECTIVENESS OF DUPLEX/COMBINE FUNCTION | 7-1 7-1 7-1 7-2 7-2 7-2 7-2 7-5 7-5 7-5 7-5 |
| 7. ENERGY SAVING. 7.1 ENERGY SAVE. 7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES | 7-1 7-1 7-1 7-2 7-2 7-2 7-2 7-5 7-5 7-5 7-5 7-5 |

READ THIS FIRST

Safety, Conventions

Safety

Prevention of Physical Injury

- 1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the printer and peripherals, make sure that the printer power cord is unplugged.
- 2. The wall outlet should be near the printer and easily accessible.
- 3. Note that some components of the printer and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
- 4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.
- 5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the printer is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.
- 6. To prevent a fire or explosion, keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols.

Health Safety Conditions

Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

Observance of Electrical Safety Standards

The printer and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.

Safety and Ecological Notes For Disposal

- 1. Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
- 2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductors in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
- 3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
- 4. When keeping used lithium batteries in order to dispose of them later, do not put more than 100 batteries per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

A CAUTION

- The controller board in this machine contains a lithium battery.
- The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type of battery recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local laws and regulations.

LASER SAFETY

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

A WARNING

 Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

A WARNING

 Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

Caution Labels



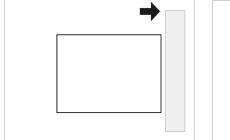
g176_labels

Conventions

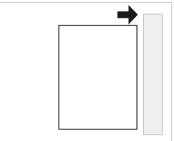
Conventions

| Symbol | What it means | |
|--------|----------------------------------|--|
| 18- | Refer to section number | |
| CT | See Core Tech Manual for details | |
| P | Screw | |
| c) | Connector | |
| Ĉ | E-ring | |
| Ø | C-ring | |

The following notations are used in text to describe the direction of paper feed: lengthwise and sideways. The annotations "SEF" and "LEF" denote "Short Edge Feed" and "Long Edge Feed". (The arrows indicate the direction of paper feed.)



SEF (Short Edge Feed)



LEF (Long Edge Feed)

PRODUCT INFORMATION

| REVISION HISTORY | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|--|--|
| Page | Page Date Added/Updated/New | | |
| | None | | |

1. PRODUCT INFORMATION

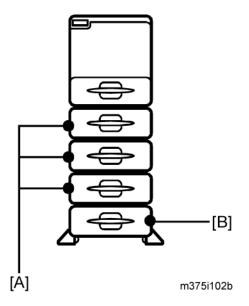
1.1 SPECIFICATIONS

See Appendices:

- Appendices: Basic Specifications
- Appendices: Controller Specifications

1.2 MACHINE CONFIGURATION

1.2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

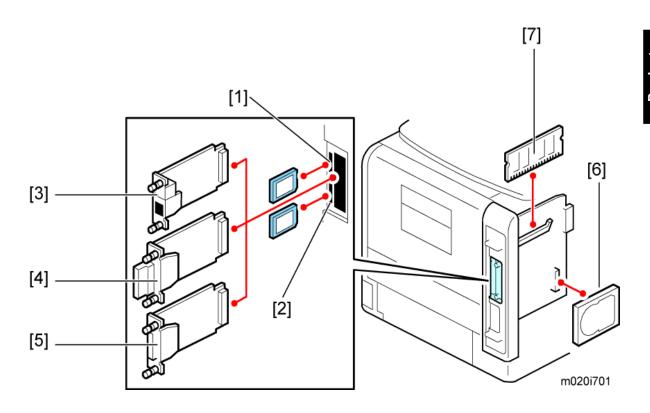


Main

| Item | Machine code | Remarks |
|-------------------------|--------------|--|
| Mainframe (45 / 47 ppm) | M020 | 45 ppm (A4 - SEF) 47 ppm (LT - SEF) |
| Mainframe (50 / 52 ppm) | M021 | 50 ppm (A4 - SEF) 52 ppm (LT - SEF) |

Options

| Item | Machine code | Remarks |
|----------------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| Paper Feed Unit TK1120 [A] | M386 | Without casters |
| Paper Feed Unit TK1130 [B] | M389 | With casters |

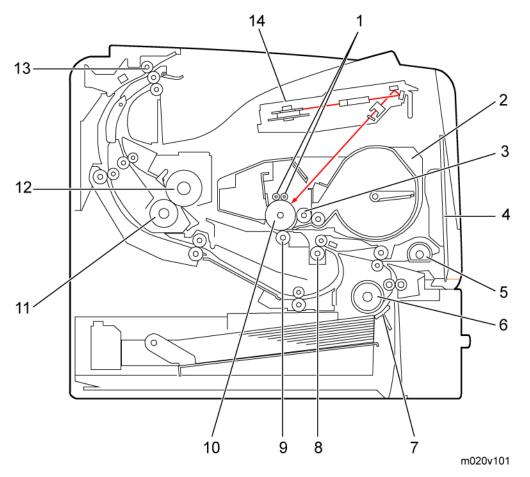


Internal options

| ltem | Machine code | Remarks |
|---|--------------|-------------------|
| Memory Unit Type G 256 MB [7] | D362 | Optional for M020 |
| Memory Unit Type I 512 MB [7] | D435 | Optional for M020 |
| Hard Disk Drive Type 4310 [6] | M394 | Optional for M020 |
| IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type A [5] | B679 | |
| IEEE 802.11a/g interface Unit Type L [4] | M344 | For NA |
| IEEE 802.11a/g Interface Unit Type M [4] | M344 | For EU |
| Gigabit Ethernet Board Type A [3] | G874 | |
| Gigabit Ethernet Board Type C [3] | M397 | For NA |
| SD Card for Netware Printing Type E [1] | M388-03 | |
| IPDS Unit Type 5200 [1] | M388-04 | For NA |
| IPDS Unit Type 5200 [1] | M388-05 | For EU |
| SD Card for Fonts Type C [1] | M352 | For EU |

1.3 OVERVIEW

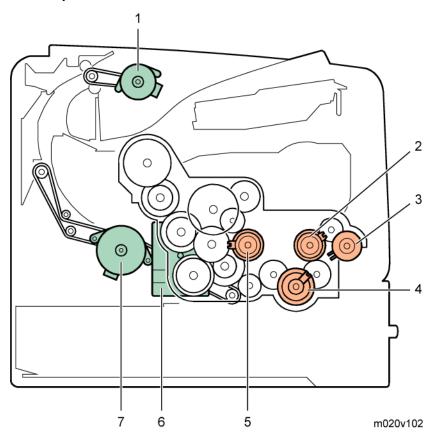
1.3.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



- 1. Charge roller
- 2. Cartridge (AIO-type)
- 3. Development roller
- 4. By-pass feed tray
- 5. By-pass feed roller
- 6. Paper feed roller
- 7. Friction pad

- 8. Registration roller
- 9. Transfer roller
- 10. Drum
- 11. Pressure roller
- 12. Hot roller
- 13. Paper exit roller
- 14. Laser unit

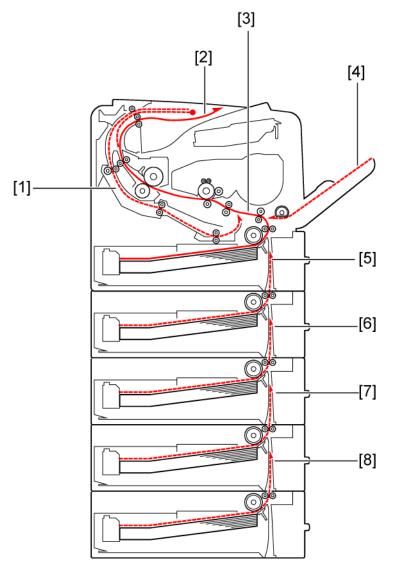
Drive Layout



- 1. Paper exit motor
- 2. Relay clutch
- 3. By-pass feed clutch
- 4. Paper feed clutch
- 5. Registration clutch
- 6. Main motor
- 7. Duplex motor

Overview

1.3.2 PAPER PATH



m020v201c

- 1. Paper feed through duplex unit
- 2. Paper exit to the paper stack
- 3. Paper feed from tray 1
- 4. Paper feed from by-pass tray
- 5. Paper feed from optional PFU (tray 2)
- 6. Paper feed from optional PFU (tray 3)
- 7. Paper feed from optional PFU (tray 4)
- 8. Paper feed from optional PFU (tray 5)

INSTALLATION

| REVISION HISTORY | | | |
|------------------|------|-------------------|--|
| Page | Date | Added/Updated/New | |
| | | None | |

2. INSTALLATION

2.1 MACHINE INSTALLATION

| Category | Item | Machine code | References | |
|-----------|---|---------------|------------------------------|--|
| Main unit | - | M020/ M021 | Quick Installation Guide | |
| | Paper Feed Unit TK1120 | M386 | p.2-22 | |
| | Paper Feed Unit TK1130 | M389 | p.2-27 | |
| | Memory Unit Type G 256 MB | D362 | | |
| Options | Memory Unit Type I 512 MB | D435 | | |
| | Hard Disk Drive Type 4310 | M394 | | |
| | IEEE 802.11a/g interface Unit Type L (NA) *1 | M344 | | |
| | IEEE 802.11a/g interface Unit Type M (EU) *1 | M344 | p.2-4, p.2-5 | |
| | IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type A | B679 | | |
| | Gigabit Ethernet Board Type A *1 | G874 | | |
| | Gigabit Ethernet Board Type C *1 M397 | | | |
| | IPDS Unit Type 5200 | D571 | | |
| | SD Card for Netware Printing Type E | M388-03 | Software Guide, Section 6 | |
| Drivers | - | | Software Guide, Section 1 | |

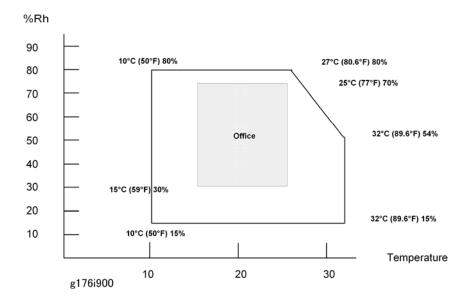
Refer to the following sections for installation details for all models.

*1: These units cannot be installed at the same time.

2.2 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

2.2.1 ENVIRONMENT

-Temperature and Humidity Chart-



- Temperature Range: 10°C to 32°C (50°F to 89.6°F)
- Humidity Range: 15% to 80% RH
- Ambient Illumination: Less than 1,500 lux (Do not expose to direct sunlight.)
- Ventilation: Room air should turn over at least 3 times/hr/person
- Ambient Dust: Less than 0.1 mg/m³
- Do not install the machine where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or to direct airflow (from a fan, air conditioner, air cleaner, etc.).
- Do not install the machine where it will be exposed to corrosive gas.
- Install the machine at a location lower than 2,000 m (6,560 ft.) above sea level.
- Place the machine on a firm and level base.
- Do not install the machine where it may be subjected to strong vibration.

2.2.2 MACHINE LEVEL

| Front to back: | Within 5 mm (0.2") of level |
|--|-----------------------------|
| Right to left: Within 5 mm (0.2") of level | |

2.2.3 MINIMUM OPERATIONAL SPACE REQUIREMENTS

Place the machine near the power source, providing clearance as shown.

m020v261

- A: Rear 200 mm (7.9")
- B: Right 100 mm (4.0")
- C: Front 350 mm (13.8")
- D: Left 100 mm (4.0")

2.2.4 POWER SUPPLY

A CAUTION

- Make sure that the wall outlet is near the machine and easily accessible. After completing installation, make sure the plug fits firmly into the outlet.
- Avoid multiple connections to the same power outlet.
- Be sure to ground the machine.

Input voltage:

| North America: | 120 – 127 V, 60 Hz, 12 A |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| Europe/Asia: | 220 – 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 8 A |

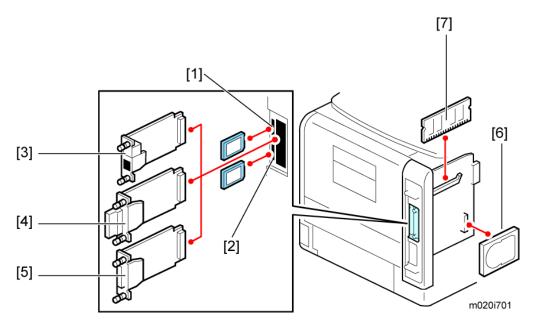
Image quality guaranteed at rated voltage \pm 10%.

Operation guaranteed at rated voltage \pm 15%.

2.3 CONTROLLER OPTIONS

2.3.1 OVERVIEW

This machine has an I/F card slot for optional I/F connections and SD card slots. After you install an option, check that the machine can recognize it (see "Check All Connections" at the end of this section).



I/F Card Slots

The I/F slot is used for one of the optional I/F connections (only one can be installed):
 Gigabit Ethernet [3], IEEE802.11a/g (Wireless LAN) [4] or IEEE 1284 interface board [5].

SD Card Slots

- Slot 1 [1] (Upper) is used for the Security Card (standard) and IPDS Unit.
 If IPDS Unit is to be installed, first merge IPDS application into the Security Card with SP mode
- Slot 2 [2] (Lower) is used for the VM card and service (for example, updating the firmware).

SDRAM slot

 The SDRAM slot is used for the SDRAM memory [7] (Standard for type M021, optional for type M020).

Hard disk connector

Hard disk connector is used for the hard disk [6] (Standard for type M021, optional for type M020) installation.

M020/M021

2.3.2 INSTALLING THE SD MEMORY CARD OPTIONS

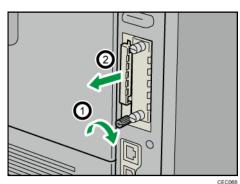
Installation

ACAUTION

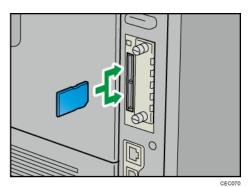
 Keep SD memory cards out of reach of children. If a child swallows an SD memory card, consult a doctor immediately.

🛨 Important

- Do not subject the card to physical shocks.
- The VM card is optional for M020 models only. To use it, the optional 512 MB SDRAM module must be installed.
- 1. Check the contents of the package.
- 2. Turn off the power, and then unplug the power cord.



3. Remove the screw, and then carefully remove the cover of the SD card slot.

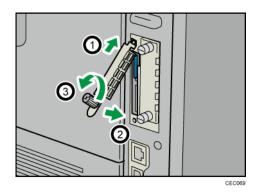


4. Carefully push in the SD card (notched corner downward and leading), until it clicks into place.

Insert the SD card in the appropriate slot as follows:

- Upper slot: SD font card, NetWare card, Security SD card (Standard for M020), IPDS card.
- Lower slot: For service only (Firmware update, application move, etc.)

The SD card supplied with the optional hard disk (M020 model only) can be used in either of the two slots.



5. Reattach the cover over the SD card. Fasten the screw to secure the cover.

Vote Note

- Do not touch the card while the printer is in use. It may come loose, even if pushed only slightly. The slot cover must be reattached.
- You can confirm that the SD card was installed correctly by checking the control panel menu. Depending on the SD card, certain menu items appear on the display.
- SD card supplied with the optional hard disk (M020 model only): Make sure [Machine Data Encryption] appears in [Security Options]. Depending on settings, [Machine Data Encryption] might not appear. For details about how to confirm this setting, consult your administrator.
- NetWare card: Make sure [NetWare] appears in [Effective Protocol] under [Network].

2.3.3 SD CARD APPLICATION MOVE

🛨 Important

• The PostScript3 application and fonts cannot be moved to another SD card. However, other applications can be moved onto the PostScript3 SD card.

Overview

The service program "SD Card Appli Move" (SP5-873) lets you copy application programs from one SD card to another SD card.

Slot 1 (Upper) is used to store application programs. But there are 3 possible applications (PostScript 3, DOS (DataOverwriteSecurity) unit, PictBridge). You cannot run application programs from Slot 2 (Lower). However you can move application programs from Slot 2 (Lower) to Slot 1 (Upper) with the following procedure.

Make sure that the target SD card has enough space.

- 1. Enter SP5873 "SD Card Appli Move".
- 2. Then move the application from the SD Card in Slot 2 (Lower) to the SD Card in Slot 1 (Upper).

Vote Note

- Do steps 1 2 again if you want to move another application program.
- 3. Exit the SP mode.

Be very careful when you do the SD Card Appli Move procedure:

- The data necessary for authentication is transferred with the application program from an SD card to another SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you copy the application program from one card to another card.
- Do not use the SD card if it has been used before for other purposes. Normal operation is not guaranteed when such an SD card is used.
- Keep the SD card in a safe place after you copy the application program from one card to another card. This is done for the following reasons:

1) The SD card can be the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program.

2) You may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.

Move Exec

The menu "Move Exec" (SP5873-001) lets you copy application programs from the original SD card to another SD card.

🛨 Important

- Do not set ON (Lock) the write-protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write-protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.
- 1. Turn the main switch off.
- 2. Make sure that an SD card is in SD Card Slot 1 (Upper). The application program is copied to this SD card.
- 3. Insert the SD card with the application program in SD Card Slot 2 (Lower). The application program is copied from this SD card.
- 4. Turn the main switch on.
- 5. Start the SP mode.
- 6. Select SP5873-001 "Move Exec."
- 7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
- 8. Turn the main switch off.
- 9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2 (Lower).
- 10. Turn the main switch on.
- 11. Check that the application programs run normally.

Undo Exec

"Undo Exec" (SP5873-002) lets you copy back application programs from an SD card to the original SD card. You can use this program when, for example, you have mistakenly copied some programs by using Move Exec (SP5873-001).

🛨 Important

- Do not set ON (Lock) the write protect switch of the system SD card or application SD card on the machine. If the write protect switch is ON, a download error (e.g. Error Code 44) occurs during a firmware upgrade or application merge.
- 1. Turn the main switch off.
- 2. Insert the original SD card in SD Card Slot 2 (Lower). The application program is copied back into this card.
- 3. Insert the SD card with the application program in SD Card Slot 1 (Upper). The application program is copied back from this SD card.
- 4. Turn the main switch on.
- 5. Start the SP mode.
- 6. Select SP5873-002 "Undo Exec."

- 7. Follow the messages shown on the operation panel.
- 8. Turn the main switch off.
- 9. Remove the SD card from SD Card Slot 2 (Lower).

Vote Note

- This step assumes that the application programs in the SD card are used by the machine.
- 10. Turn the main switch on.
- 11. Check that the application programs run normally.
- 12. Make sure that the machine can recognize the option (see "p.2-21" at the end of this section).

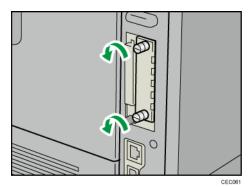
2.3.4 IEEE 802.11 A/G (WIRELESS LAN)

Installation Procedure

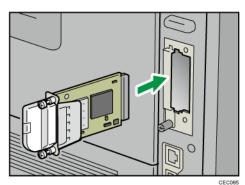
ACAUTION

• Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

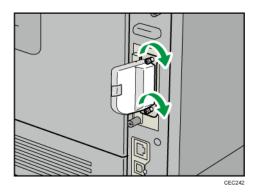
You can only install one of the network interfaces or printer enhanced option at one time: IEEE 802.11 a/g (Wireless LAN), Gigabit Ethernet, or File Format Converter.



1. Remove the two screws and remove the cover of the slot in which the Wireless LAN interface board is to be installed.



2. Fully insert the Wireless LAN interface board.



3. Tighten the two screws to secure the interface board.

🔸 Note

• Check the Wireless LAN interface board is connected firmly to the interface board slot.

🔸 Note

- You may have to move the machine if the reception is not clear.
- Make sure that the machine is not located near an appliance or any type of equipment that generates strong magnetic fields.
- Put the machine as close as possible to the access point.

UP Mode Settings for Wireless LAN

Enter the UP mode. Then do the procedure below to perform the initial interface settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g. These settings take effect every time the machine is powered on.

🔸 Note

- You cannot use the wireless LAN if you use Ethernet.
- 1. Press the "User Tools/Counter" key.
- 2. On the touch panel, press "System Settings".

Vote Note

- The Network I/F (default: Ethernet) must be set for either Ethernet or wireless LAN.
- 3. Select "Interface Settings".
- 4. Press "Wireless LAN". Only the wireless LAN options show.
- 5. Communication Mode. Select either "802.11 Ad hoc" or "Infrastructure".
- 6. SSID Setting. Enter the SSID setting. (The setting is case sensitive.)
- 7. Channel. You need this setting when Ad Hoc Mode is selected.

Region A (mainly Europe and Asia)

Range: 1-13, 36, 40, 44 and 48 channels (default: 11)

Region B (mainly North America)

Range: 1-11, 36, 40, 44 and 48 channels (default: 11)

Vote Note

- The allowed range for the channel settings may vary for different countries.
- In some countries, only the following channels are available: Range: 1-11 channels (default: 11)
- 8. WEP (Encryption) Setting. The WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) setting is designed to protect wireless data transmission. The same WEP key is required on the receiving side in order to unlock encoded data. There are 64 bit and 128 bit WEP keys.

WEP:

Selects "Active" or "Inactive" ("Inactive" is default.).

Range of Allowed Settings:

64 bit: 10 characters

128 bit: 26 characters

9. Press "Return to Default" to initialize the wireless LAN settings.

Press "Yes" to initialize the following settings:

- Transmission mode
- Channel
- Transmission Speed
- WEP
- SSID
- WEP Key

SP Mode and UP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11 a/g Wireless LAN

The following SP commands and UP modes can be set for IEEE 802.11 a/g.

| SP No. | Name | Function |
|----------|-----------------------|--|
| 5840-006 | Channel MAX | Sets the maximum range of the channel settings for the country. |
| 5840-007 | Channel MIN | Sets the minimum range of the channel settings allowed for the country. |
| 5840-008 | Transmission Speed | Sets the transmission speed. Auto , 54 Mbps, 48 Mbps, 36 Mbps, 24 Mbps, 18 Mbps, 12 Mbps, 9 Mbps, 6 Mbps, 11 Mbps, 5.5 Mbps, 2 Mbps, 1 Mbps (Default: Auto). |
| 5840-011 | WEP Key Select | Used to select the WEP key (Default: 00). |
| UP mode | Name | Function |
| | SSID | Used to confirm the current SSID setting. |
| | WEP Key | Used to confirm the current WEP key setting. |
| | WEP Mode | Used to show the maximum length of the string that can be used for the WEP Key entry. |

nstallation

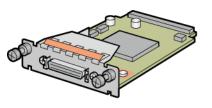
2.3.5 IEEE 1284 INTERFACE BOARD

A CAUTION

• Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

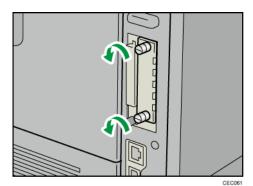
🛨 Important

- Before beginning work, ground yourself by touching something metal to discharge any static electricity. Static electricity can damage the IEEE 1284 interface board.
- Do not subject the IEEE 1284 interface board to physical shocks.
- For connection to the IEEE 1284 interface board, use a half pitch 36-pin interface cable.

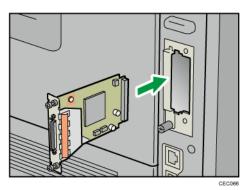


BFL302S

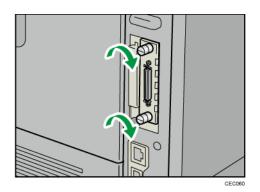
1. Check the contents of the package.



2. Remove the two screws and remove the cover of the slot in which the 1284 interface board is installed.



3. Fully insert the IEEE 1284 interface board.



4. Tighten the two screws to secure the interface board.

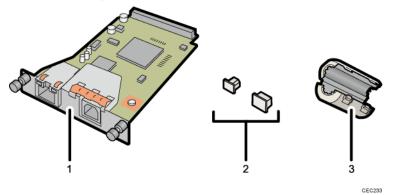
Vote Note

- Confirm that the IEEE 1284 interface board was correctly installed by printing the configuration page. If it is correctly installed, "Parallel Interface" will appear for "Device Connection" on the configuration page.
- If the board was not installed properly, repeat the procedure from step 3.
- For details on printing the configuration, see "p.2-21" at the end of this section.

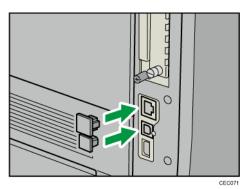
2.3.6 GIGABIT ETHERNET

A CAUTION

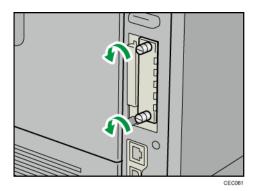
• Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.



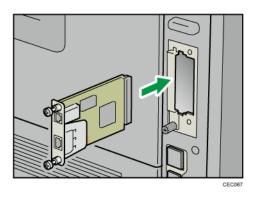
- 1: Gigabit Ethernet Board
- 2: Protective caps (one each for the Ethernet port and the USB port)
- 3: Ferrite core (Design of the ferrite core varies according to printer model.)
- 1. Check the contents of the package.



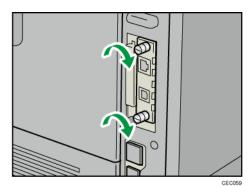
2. Disconnect the cables from the Ethernet port and USB port of the printer, and cover each port with its protective cap.



3. Remove the two screws and remove the cover of the slot in which the Gigabit Ethernet board is installed.



4. Fully insert the Gigabit Ethernet board.

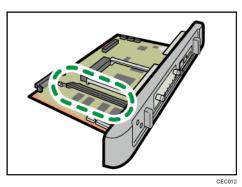


- Tighten the two screws to secure the Gigabit Ethernet board.
 Note
 - Check the Gigabit Ethernet board is connected firmly to the interface board slot.
- 6. Attach the ferrite core [3] to the LAN cable, and connect the LAN cable to the machine.
- 7. Make sure that the machine can recognize this option (see 'p.2-21' at the end of this section).

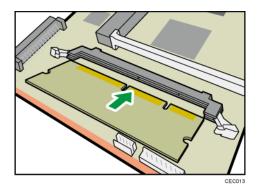
2.3.7 MEMORY UNIT TYPE G 256MB / I 512MB (ONLY FOR M020)

A CAUTION

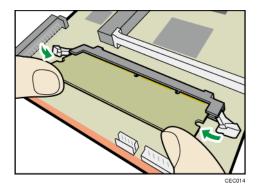
- Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.
- 1. Controller unit (p.4-43)



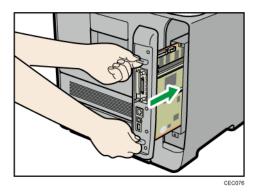
2. Place the controller board on a flat surface. The SDRAM module is installed in the slot shown in the illustration above.



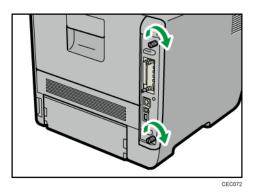
3. To install the recommended memory, align the notch of the memory module with the protruding part of the vacant slot, and then carefully insert the module at an angle.



4. Keeping the module at an angle, press it down until it clicks into place.



5. Align the controller board with the top and bottom rails, and then push it carefully in, until it stops.



6. Fasten the controller board to the printer with the two screws.

🔸 Note

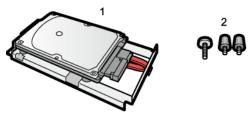
- After finishing the installation, you can check the SDRAM module is properly installed: Print the configuration page from the [List/Test Print] menu. If it is installed properly, the memory capacity will appear under "Total Memory" on the configuration page.
- The table below shows the total SDRAM module capacities.

| Standard | Extended | Total |
|----------|----------|--------|
| 256 MB | 256MB | 512 MB |
| 256 MB | 512 MB | 768MB |

2.3.8 HARD DISK DRIVE TYPE 2670 (ONLY FOR M020)

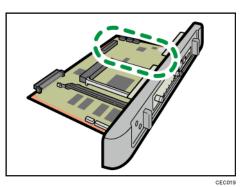


• Unplug the main machine power cord before you do the following procedure.

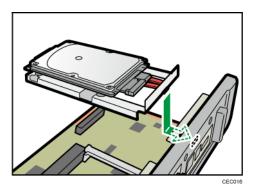


CEC015

- 1: Hard disk
- 2: Screws (Knob screws x 3)
- 1. Check the package contains the above.
- 2. Controller unit (IP p.4-43)



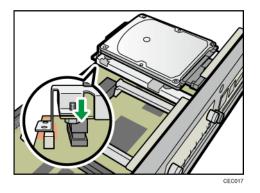
3. Place the controller board on a flat surface. The hard disk is installed in the slot shown in the illustration above.



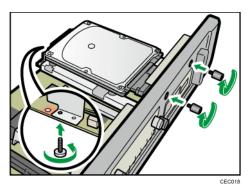
4. Insert the protrusion on the front end of the hard disk board into the notch on the back panel of the controller board.

Vote Note

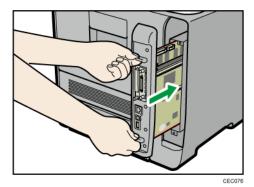
• Be sure to set the hard disk board parallel with the controller board.



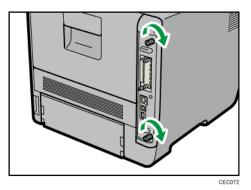
5. Fit the hard disk on the connector of the controller board carefully until it stops.



6. Tighten the two screws by turning them clockwise with a coin, and then secure the hard disk board by tightening the third screw from the under side of the controller board.



7. Align the controller board with the top and bottom rails, and then push it carefully in, until it stops.



8. Fasten the controller board to the printer with the two screws.

🔸 Note

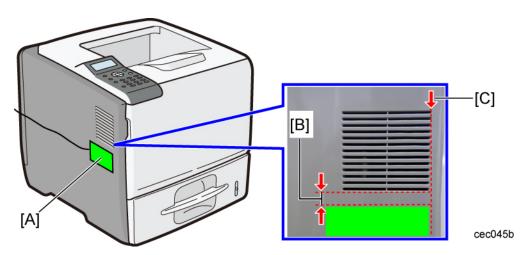
- After finishing installation, you can check whether the hard disk is properly installed: Print the configuration page from the [List/Test Print] menu. If it is installed properly, you will see "Hard Disk" will appear for "Device Connection" on the configuration page.
- If the Hard disk is not properly installed, repeat this procedure.
- For details on printing the configuration, see "p.2-21" at the end of this section.

2.3.9 CHECK ALL CONNECTIONS

- 1. Plug in the power cord. Then turn on the main switch.
- Enter the printer user mode. Then print the configuration page.
 User Tools > Printer Settings > List Test Print > Config. Page

All installed options are shown in the "System Reference" column.

2.3.10 IC CARD READER (EXTERNAL OPTIONS) ATTACHING LOCATION



To enable good communication between the IC card reader and the IC card, install the IC card reader at the position above [A].

- Position the IC card reader with the upper edge 10 mm (0.4 in.) below the air inlet [B].
- Align the front edge of the IC card reader with the front line of the air inlet [C].

🔸 Note

 The USB cable of the IC card reader should be fixed with clamps to prevent it from sagging.

2.4 PAPER FEED UNIT TK1120 (M386)

2.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

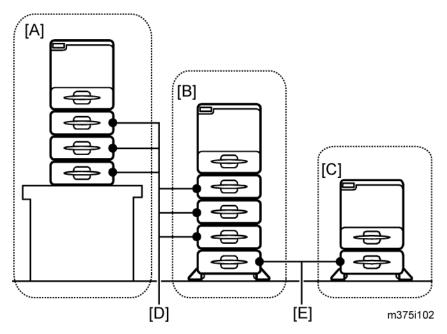
Confirm that you have these accessories.

| Description | Q'ty |
|---------------------------|------|
| Installation instructions | 1 |
| EMC sheet | 1 |
| Fixation screws | 2 |

2.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

ACAUTION

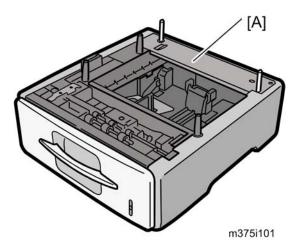
• Unplug the main machine's power cord before starting the following procedure.



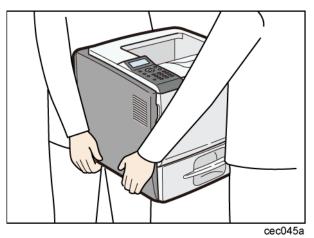
The number of optional paper feed units that can be attached depends on the location where the machine is installed.

- [A]: Up to three paper feed units (M386 [D]) can be installed on a desk.
- [B]: Up to three paper feed units (M386 [D]) and one paper feed unit (M389 [E]) can be installed on the floor.
- [C]: Attach the optional paper feed unit with casters (M389 [E]) to the bottom of the machine to install the machine directly on the floor.

M020/M021



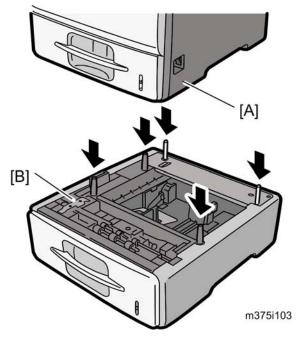
- 1. Remove all tape and cardboard from the optional paper feed unit [A].
- 2. Pull the paper tray of the main unit part way out; then, remove the tape and cardboard in the paper tray, and push the tray back in.



3. Lift the printer using the inset grips on both sides of the printer.

★ Important

- When moving the printer, do not hold on the following parts as doing so could cause a malfunction:
 - The handle of the standard paper tray.
 - The underside of the by-pass tray.



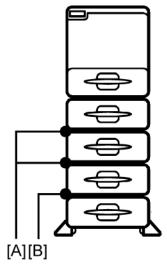
- 4. Set the machine [A] on the paper feed unit [B].
 - Two people are required to lift the machine.

Vote Note

- When installing a second paper feed unit, place it on the first paper feed unit before placing the printer onto the pair of paper feed units
- 5. Remove the paper(s) tray from the paper tray unit(s).
- 6. Load paper into the paper tray(s). Adjust the side and end fences as necessary. If loading $8^{1}/_{2}$ "x 14" paper, remove the end fence and set it in the special compartment.
- 7. Insert the paper tray(s) back in the paper tray unit(s).

2.4.3 WHEN STACKING FOUR OPTIONAL PAPER FEED UNITS

Paper feed units should be fixed to each other with screws when stacking four optional paper feed units. Fix the paper feed units to each other as described below.

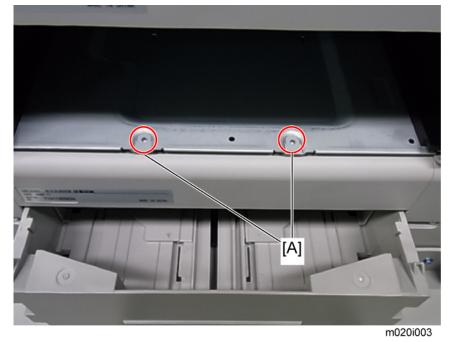


m375i102c

- 1. Between top three optional units [A]
- 2. Between the unit with casters (forth optional) and the third optional unit [B]

Fixing the units together

1. Pull out the paper trays of the paper feed units to be fixed.



2. Fix the paper feed unit at the rear side [A] with the two screws that come with the paper feed unit.

🛨 Important

• Never detach the stabilizers of the paper feed unit with casters (M389).

2.5 PAPER FEED UNIT TK1130 (M389)

2.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

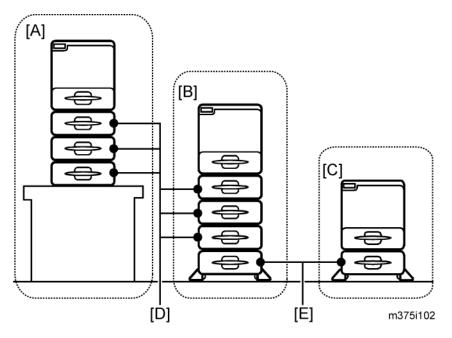
Confirm that you have these accessories.

| Description | Q'ty |
|---------------------------|------|
| Installation instructions | 1 |
| EMC sheet | 1 |

2.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

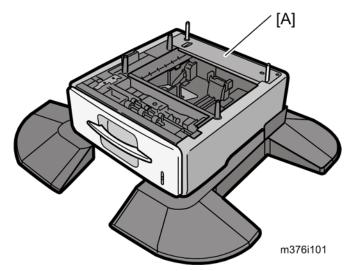
ACAUTION

• Unplug the main machine's power cord before starting the following procedure.

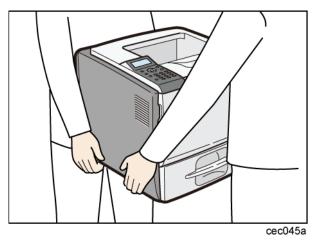


The number of optional paper feed units that can be attached depends on the location where the machine is installed.

- [A]: Up to three paper feed units (M386 [D]) can be installed on a desk.
- [B]: Up to three paper feed units (M386 [D]) and one paper feed unit (M389 [E]) can be installed on the floor.
- [C]: Attach the optional paper feed unit with casters (M389 [E]) to the bottom of the machine to install the machine directly on the floor.



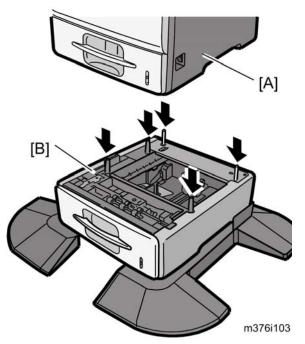
- 1. Remove all tape and cardboard from the optional paper feed unit [A].
- 2. Pull the paper tray of the main unit part way out; then, remove the tape and cardboard in the paper tray, and push the tray back in.



3. Lift the printer using the inset grips on both sides of the printer.

🛨 Important

- When moving the printer, do not hold on the following parts as doing so could cause a malfunction:
 - The handle of the standard paper tray.
 - The underside of the by-pass tray.



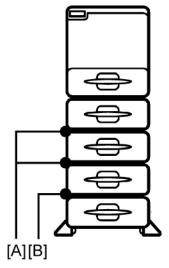
- 4. Set the machine [A] on the paper feed unit [B].
 - Two people are required to lift the machine.

Vote Note

- When installing a second paper feed unit, place it on the first paper feed unit before placing the printer onto the pair of paper feed units
- 5. Remove the paper(s) tray from the paper tray unit(s).
- 6. Load paper in the paper tray(s). Adjust the side and end fences as necessary. If loading $8^{1}/_{2}$ "x 14" paper, remove the end fence and set it in the special compartment.
- 7. Insert the paper tray(s) back in the paper tray unit(s).

2.5.3 WHEN STACKING FOUR OPTIONAL PAPER FEED UNITS

Paper feed units should be fixed each other with screws when stacking four optional paper feed units. Fix the paper feed units to each other as described below.

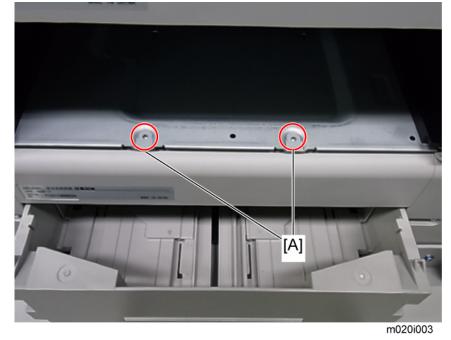


m375i102c

- 1. Between top three optional units [A]
- 2. Between the unit with casters (forth optional) and third optional unit [B].

Fixing the units together

1. Pull out the paper trays of the paper feed units to be fixed.



2. Fix the paper feed unit at the rear side [A] with the two screws that come with the paper feed unit.

🛨 Important

• Never detach the stabilizers of the paper feed unit with casters (M389).

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

| REVISION HISTORY | | | |
|------------------|------|-------------------|--|
| Page | Date | Added/Updated/New | |
| | | None | |

3. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

3.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES

3.1.1 USER MAINTENANCE

The customer can replace all PM items with the Maintenance Kit.

The user can maintain this machine. For more see "Printer Engine Service Mode".

The operation panel shows "Replace Maintenance Kit" when the PM counter reaches 120 k.

After the user replaces the fusing unit in the maintenance kit, the machine automatically resets the PM counter.

| ltem | Quantity | Remarks |
|-------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|
| Fusing unit | 1 | - |
| Transfer roller | 1 | - |
| Paper feed roller | 5 | For standard and optional tray(s) |
| Friction pad | 5 | For standard and optional tray(s) |

3.1.2 SERVICE MAINTENANCE

See "Appendices" for the following information:

- Preventive Maintenance Items
- Other Yield Parts

3.2 PM PARTS SETTINGS

3.2.1 BEFORE REMOVING THE OLD PM PARTS

- 1. Enter the SP mode.
- 2. Output the SMC logging data with SP5-990-004.
- 3. Clear the PM counters with SP7-804.
- 4. Exit the SP mode.

| Item | SP |
|-------------------|-----------|
| All Units | 7-804-002 |
| Fusing Unit | 7-804-003 |
| Transfer Roller | 7-804-004 |
| Paper Feed Roller | 7-804-005 |

For the fusing unit, there is a new unit detection mechanism. It is not necessary to reset the PM counter.

3.2.2 AFTER INSTALLING THE NEW PM PARTS

- 1. Turn on the main power switch.
- 2. Output the SMC logging data with SP5-990-004 and check the counter values.
- 3. Make sure that the PM counters for the replaced units are "0" with SP7-803. If the PM counter for a unit was not reset, then reset that counter with SP 7-804.

3.2.3 OPERATION CHECK

Check if the sample image has been printed normally.

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

| REVISION HISTORY | | | |
|------------------|------|-------------------|--|
| Page | Date | Added/Updated/New | |
| | | None | |

4. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

4.1 GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

4.1.1 PRECAUTIONS ON DISASSEMBLY

ACAUTION

 Always turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section.

Use extreme caution when removing and replacing components. The cables in the machine are located very close to moving parts; proper routing is a must.

After components have been removed, any cables that have been displaced during the

procedure must be restored as close as possible to their original positions. Before removing any component from the machine, note any cable routings that may be affected.

Before servicing the machine:

- 1. Verify that documents are not stored in memory.
- 2. Remove the print cartridge before you remove parts.
- 3. Unplug the power cord.
- 4. Work on a flat and clean surface.
- 5. Replace with authorized components only.
- 6. Do not force plastic material components.

Make sure all components are returned to their original positions.

Laser Unit

- 1. Do not loosen or adjust the screws securing the LD drive board on the LD unit. Doing so will throw the LD unit out of adjustment.
- 2. Do not adjust the variable resistors on the LD unit, as these are permanently adjusted at the factory. If replacement of the LD drive board is necessary, replace the entire LD unit.
- 3. Keep the polygon mirror and toroidal lens free of dust. Laser performance is very sensitive to dust on these components.
- 4. Do not touch the shield glass or the surface of the polygon mirror with bare hands.
- 5. Do not adjust the Laser Synchronization detector on the LD unit, as these are permanently adjusted at the factory.

Transfer Roller

- 1. Never touch the surface of the transfer roller with bare hands.
- 2. Be careful not to scratch the transfer roller, as the surface is easily damaged.

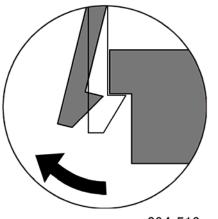
Fusing

- 1. After installing the fusing thermistor, make sure that it is in contact with the hot roller and that the roller can rotate freely.
- 2. Be careful to avoid damage to the hot roller stripper pawls and their tension springs.
- 3. Do not touch the fusing lamp and rollers with bare hands.
- 4. Make sure that the fusing lamp is positioned correctly and that it does not touch the inner surface of the hot roller.

Paper Feed

- 1. Do not touch the surface of paper feed rollers.
- 2. To avoid misfeeds, the side and end fences in each paper tray must be positioned correctly so as to align with loaded paper size.

4.1.2 RELEASING PLASTIC LATCHES



g094r513

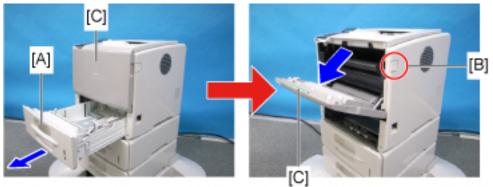
Many of the parts are held in place with plastic latches. The latches break easily, so release them carefully. To release a latch, press the hook end of the latch away from the part to which it is latched.

4.1.3 AFTER SERVICING THE MACHINE

- 1. Make sure all parts that require grounding are properly grounded.
- 2. Make sure the interlock switch is functioning.
- 3. Do not leave unused solder or parts inside the machine.
- 4. Do not leave any tools inside the machine.
- 5. Make sure all wires are properly connected and routed.
- 6. Make sure wires are not jammed between parts of the machine.

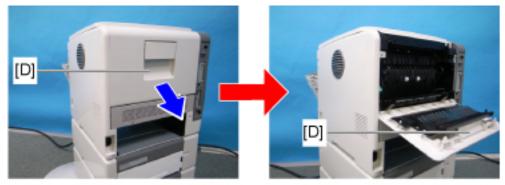
4.2 COVERS

4.2.1 RIGHT COVER



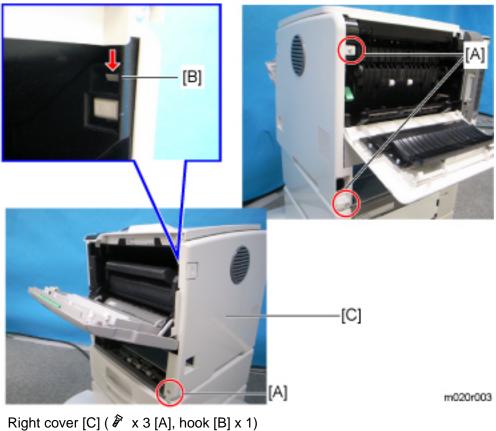
m020r001

- 1. Pull the standard tray [A] out.
- 2. Gently push the front cover release button [B], and open the front cover [C].



m020r002

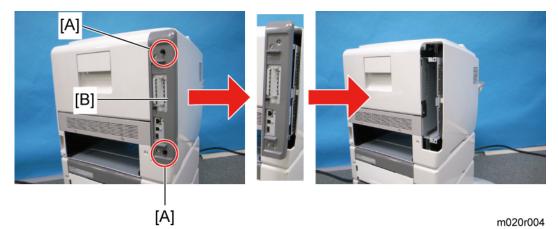
3. Open the rear cover [D].



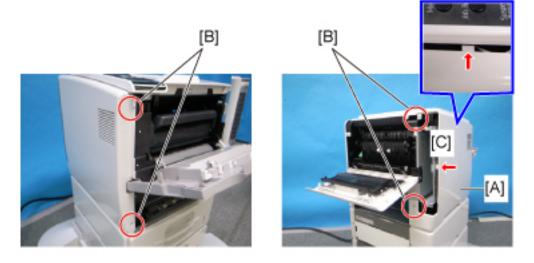
- 4. Right co
 - To remove the right cover safely, release it from the power switch by pulling the cover forward and outward slightly, and then release it from the Inlet socket by pushing the cover backward slightly.

4.2.2 LEFT COVER

- 1. Pull the standard paper tray out (p.4-3).
- 2. Open the front cover (IP p.4-3).



- 3. Slide the control board unit [B] out (Knob screw [A] x 2).
- 4. Open the rear cover (IP p.4-3).

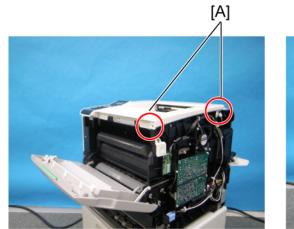


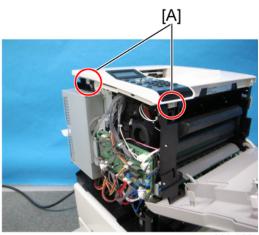
m020r005

5. Left cover [A] (*P*[B] x 4, hooks [C] x 2).

4.2.3 UPPER COVER

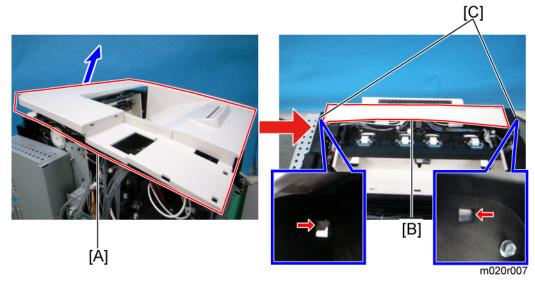
- 1. Right cover (IP p.4-3)
- 2. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 3. Open the front cover and the rear cover.





m020r006

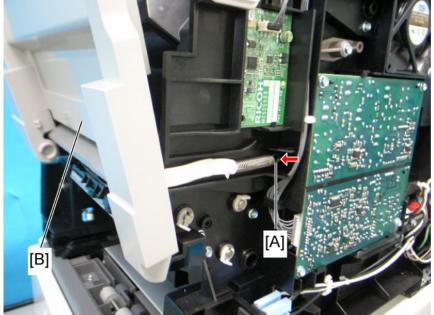
- 4. 4 screws [A].
- 5. Operation panel (p.4-10)



- 6. Part [A] of upper cover.
- 7. Part [B] of upper cover (Hooks [C] x 2).

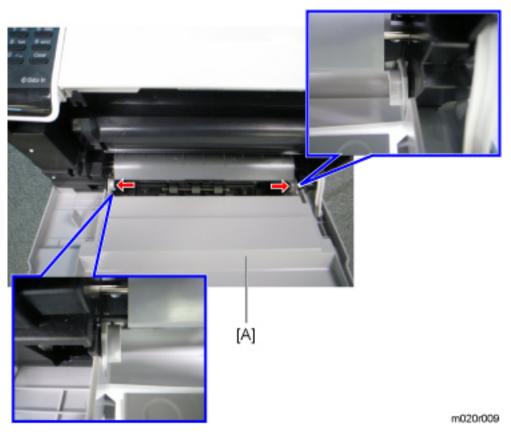
4.2.4 FRONT COVER

- 1. Pull out the standard paper tray.
- 2. By-pass tray (p.4-32)
- 3. Open the front cover [B].
- 4. Right cover (IP p.4-3)
- 5. Left cover (p.4-5)



m020r008

- 6. Close the front cover [B].
- 7. Release the tension spring [A].
- 8. Reopen the front cover [B].



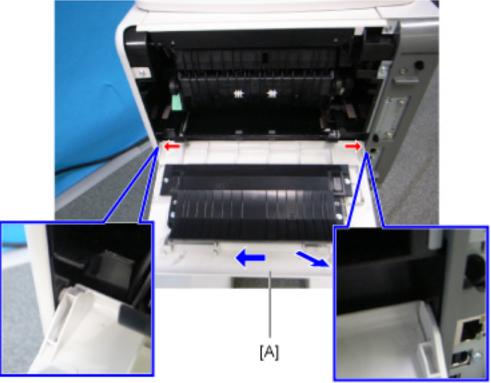
9. Front cover [A] (Hooks x 2).

🛨 Important

- Remove the by-pass tray unit before removing the front cover.
- Close the front cover before releasing the tension spring.

4.2.5 REAR COVER

1. Open the rear cover.



m020r010

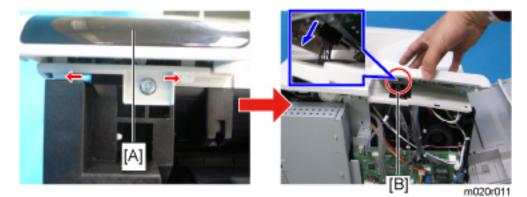
2. Rear cover [A](Hooks x 2).

🔸 Note

• To remove the rear cover easily, release the right hook by pushing the cover against the left side of mainframe lightly, and then pull out the right corner.

4.2.6 OPERATION PANEL

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Open the front cover.



3. Operation panel [A] (1 [B] x 1, hooks x 2).

4.3 LASER UNIT

ACAUTION

• Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

4.3.1 CAUTION DECAL LOCATIONS

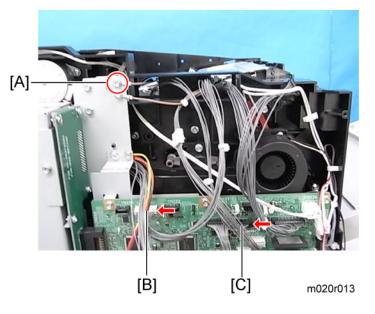


m020r012

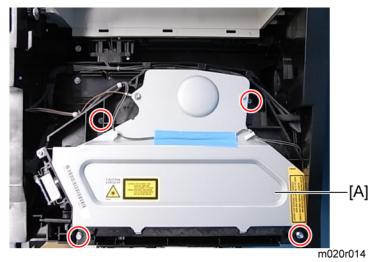
4.3.2 LASER UNIT

A CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.
- 1. Right cover (p.4-3)
- 2. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 3. Upper cover (**IP** p.4-6)



4. Grounding wire [A] and 2 connectors [B], [C] (🖾 x 2, grounding screw x 1).

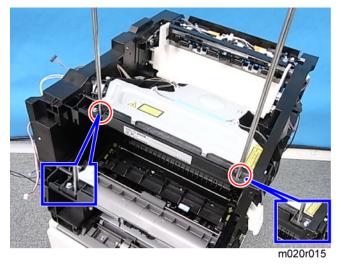


5. Laser unit [A] (*x* 4).

🔸 Note

• Never touch the surface of the mirror with bare hands.

When reinstalling the laser unit.



Vote Note

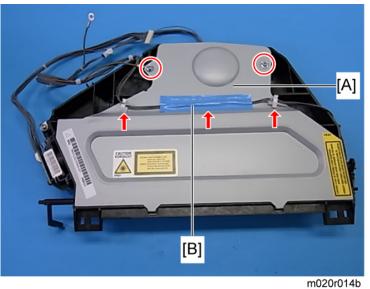
- Use the scanner positioning pins (P/N: A0069104) to reinstall the unit.
- Set the positioning pins as shown above. Then secure the laser unit.

| Replacement and Adjustment |
|----------------------------------|
|----------------------------------|

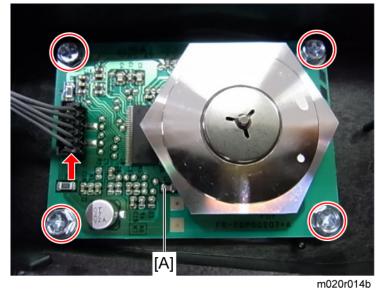
4.3.3 POLYGON MIRROR MOTOR

A CAUTION

- Turn off the main switch and unplug the machine before attempting any of the procedures in this section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.
- 1. Upper cover (p.4-6)
- 2. Laser unit (p.4-12)



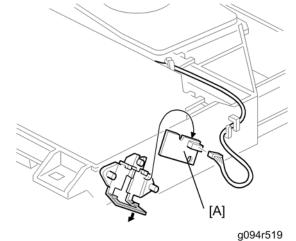
- - Keep the tape [B] above. The tape is necessary when reassembling the laser unit.



4. Polygon mirror motor [A] (🖗 x 4, 🖽 x 1)

4.3.4 LASER SYNCHRONIZATION DETECTOR

1. Laser unit (p.4-12)

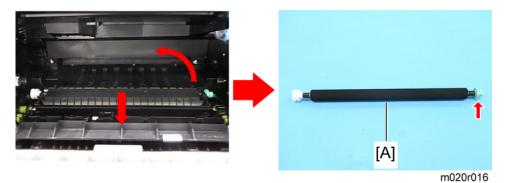


2. Laser synchronization detector [A] (1 x 1)

Replacemen and Adjustment

4.4 TRANSFER ROLLER

- 1. Open the front cover.
- 2. Remove the AIO unit.



3. Remove the transfer roller [A] as shown above.

Vote Note

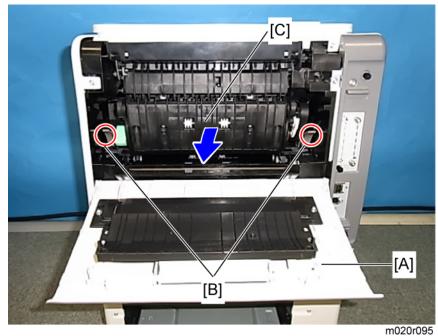
- Do not touch the transfer roller surface.
- Set the transfer roller with its green end (indicated by the arrow in the upper-right photo) on the right side.
- Make sure that the transfer roller is set securely.

4.5 FUSING

4.5.1 FUSING UNIT

ACAUTION

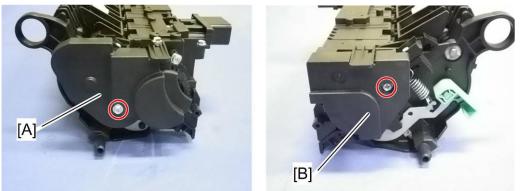
 Before handling the fusing unit, make sure that the unit is cool enough. The fusing unit can be very hot.



- 1. Open the rear cover [A].
- 2. Release the lock levers [B].
- 3. Pull the fusing unit [C] out.

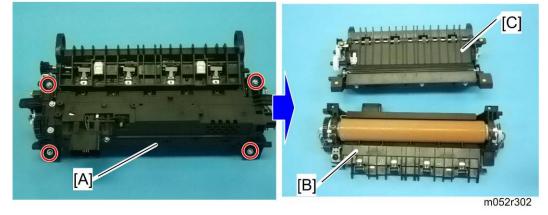
4.5.2 HOT ROLLER AND PRESSURE ROLLER SECTIONS

1. Fusing unit (**I** p.4-17)



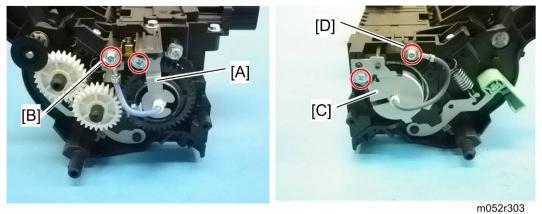
m052r301

- 2. Fusing left cover [A] (F x 1)
- 3. Fusing right cover [B] (F x 1)



4.5.3 FUSING LAMP

- 1. Fusing unit (**I** p.4-17)
- 2. Fusing left and right covers (p.4-18)



- 3. Lamp left stay [A] (🖗 x 1)
- 4. Remove the screw [B] on the left terminal of the fusing unit.
- 5. Lamp right stay [C] (🖗 x 1)
- 6. Remove the screw [D] on the right terminal of the fusing unit.



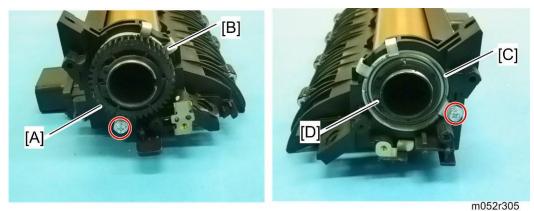
m052r304

7. Fusing lamp [A]

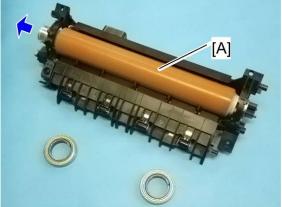
4.5.4 HOT ROLLER

A CAUTION

- Do not touch the fusing lamp and rollers with your bare hands.
- 1. Hot roller section (p.4-18)
- 2. Fusing lamp (p.4-19)



- 3. Hot roller gear [A] (Ѿx 1)
- 4. Hot roller left stay [B] (F x 1)
- 5. Hot roller right stay [C] (*x* 1)
- 6. Remove the c-ring [D].



m052r306

- 7. Hot roller [A] (bearing x 2, insulator x 2)
 - Slowly pull out the hot roller from the hot roller section, making sure not to damage the hot roller on the stripper pawls.

4.5.5 FUSING THERMISTOR

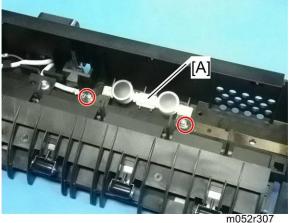
1. Fusing unit (p.4-17)



- 2. Fusing drawer connector [A] (2 x 1)
- 3. Fusing thermistor [B] (🌮 x 1, 🗂 x 1)

4.5.6 THERMOSTATS

1. Hot roller (p.4-20)



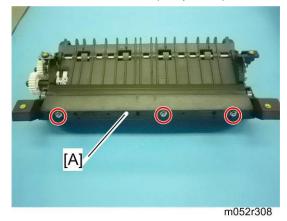
- m052r3
- 2. Thermostats [A] (🌮 x 2)

A CAUTION

 Do not reuse thermostats that are already opened. Safety is not guaranteed if you do this.

4.5.7 PRESSURE ROLLER

1. Pressure roller section (IP p.4-18)



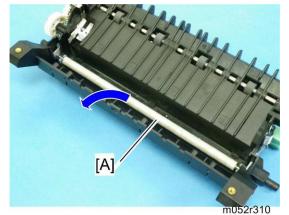
2. Fusing entrance guide [A] (🌮 x 3)



3. Pressure roller [A] (bearing x 2)

4.5.8 FUSING CLEANING ROLLER

- 1. Pressure roller section (p.4-18)
- 2. Pressure roller (p.4-22)



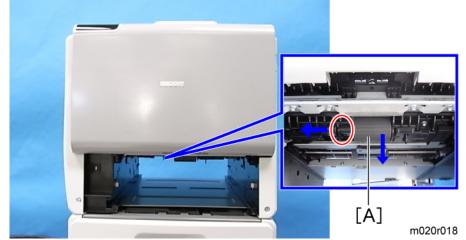
3. Fusing cleaning roller [A]

Replacement and Adjustment

4.6 PAPER FEED

4.6.1 PAPER FEED ROLLER

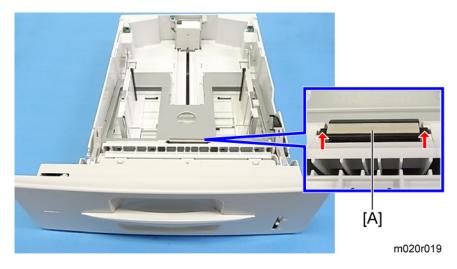
1. Pull out the paper tray before removing the paper feed roller.



2. Press the paper feed roller [A] to the left side and remove it.

4.6.2 FRICTION PAD

1. Remove the paper tray from the machine before removing the friction pad.



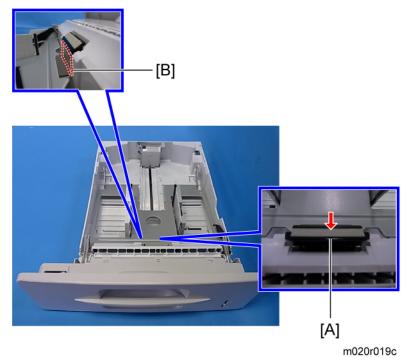
2. Friction pad [A] (Hooks x 2, spring x 1).

When reinstalling the friction pad follow this order:



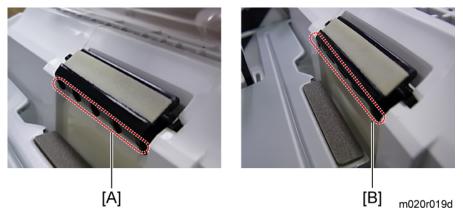


1. Place the spring [A].





2. Gently push the friction pad [A] down into the slot while bending the Mylar sheet [B] slightly outward.



🛨 Important

- A: No Good -- The friction pad catches the Mylar sheet.
- B: Good -- Mylar sheet located at outside of the friction pad.
- To prevent the friction pad from catching on the Mylar sheet, place the friction pad while bending the Mylar sheet slightly outward.

4.6.3 PAPER END SENSOR

- 1. All optional paper tray units.
- 2. Pull the standard paper tray out.
- 3. AIO unit.
- 4. Fusing unit (p.4-17)
- 5. Transfer roller (IP p.4-16)

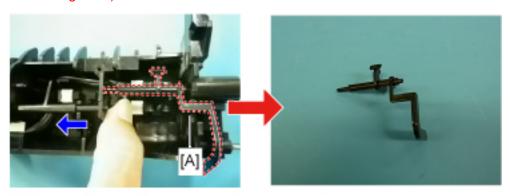


m020r020

- 6. Lay down the machine face up.
- 7. Feeler cover [A] (🖗 x 1).

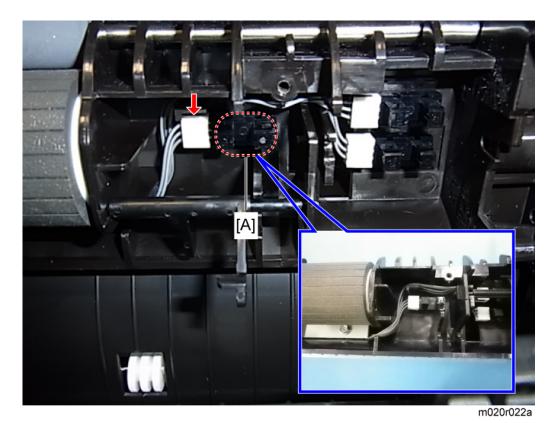
🛨 Important

- Confirm that all paper trays are detached from the machine before lying it down.
- Take care when handling this machine because of its weight. (Approximately 23 kg/51 lb)



m020r021

8. Remove the feeler [A] by bending the bushing slightly in the direction indicated by the arrow in the left photo.



9. Paper end sensor [A] (Hooks x 3, 🗊 x 1).

4.6.4 REMAINING PAPER SENSORS 1 AND 2

- 1. All optional paper tray units
- 2. Pull the standard paper tray out.
- 3. AIO unit.
- 4. Fusing unit (p.4-17)
- 5. Transfer roller (IP p.4-16)

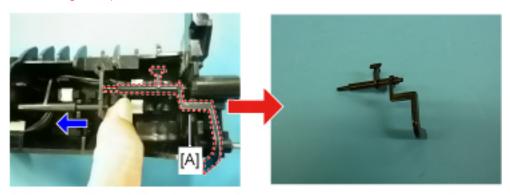


m020r020

- 6. Lay down the machine face up.
- 7. Feeler cover [A] (🖗 x 1).

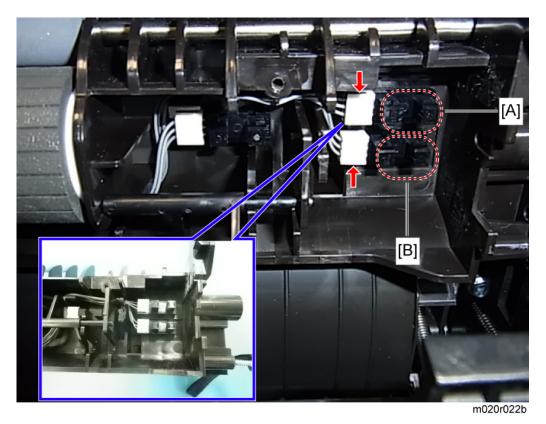
🛨 Important

- Confirm that all paper trays are detached from the machine before lying it down.
- Take care when handling this machine because of its weight. (Approximately 23 kg/51 lb)



m020r021

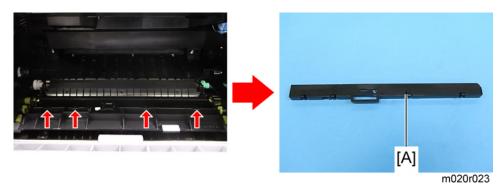
8. Remove the feeler [A] by bending the bushing slightly in the direction indicated by the arrow in the left photo.



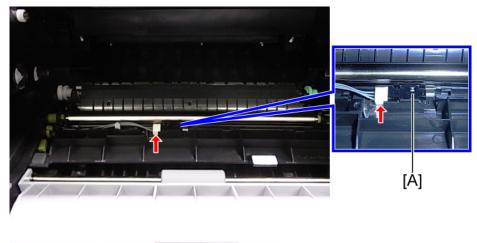
Remaining paper sensor 1 [A] and remaining paper sensor 2 [B] (Hooks x 3 (For each sensor), I x 1 (For each sensor)).

4.6.5 REGISTRATION SENSOR

- 1. Open the Front cover.
- 2. AIO unit.



3. Sensor cover [A] (Hooks x 4).



m020r024

4. Registration sensor [A] (🖽 x 1).

4.7 BY-PASS TRAY

4.7.1 BY-PASS TRAY UNIT

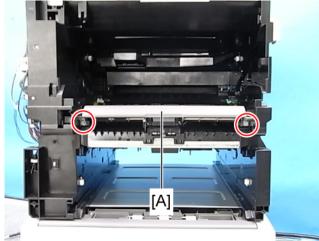
- 1. Pull the standard paper tray out.
- 2. Open the by-pass tray.



- 3. Bend two hooks [A] inward slightly and release them.
- 4. Pull the by-pass tray [A] obliquely down and remove it.

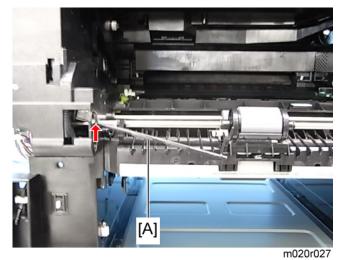
4.7.2 BY-PASS FEED ROLLER

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Right cover (IP p.4-3)
- 3. Front cover (p.4-7)
- 4. Remove the AIO unit.
- 5. Engine board with bracket (IP p.4-50)

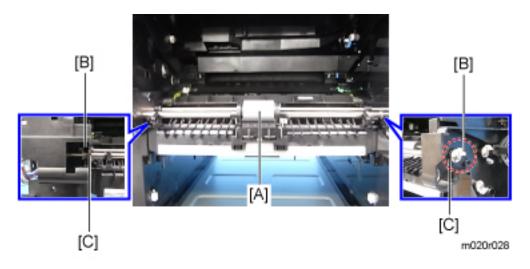


m020r026

6. Paper guide [A] (🌮 x 2).



- 7. Actuator [A].
- 8. By-pass feed clutch (p.4-63)



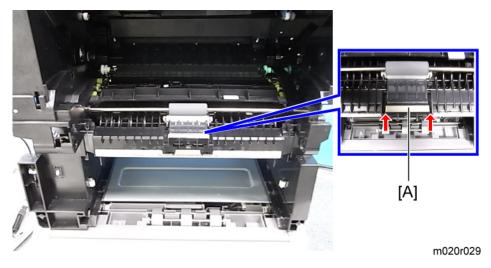
9. By-pass feed roller [A] (0 [B] x 2, bushing x 2 [C]).

🛨 Important

• Before attaching the paper guide, confirm that the actuator and the by-pass feed roller are installed securely and that they move smoothly.

4.7.3 BY-PASS FRICTION PAD

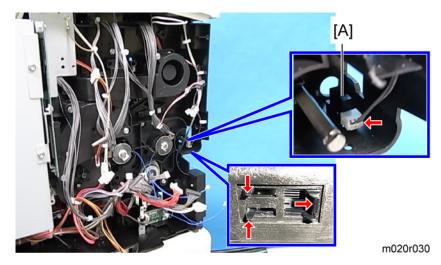
1. By-pass feed roller (IP p.4-33)



2. By-pass friction pad [A] (hooks x 2).

4.7.4 BY-PASS PAPER SENSOR

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)
- 3. By-pass feed clutch (IP p.4-63)

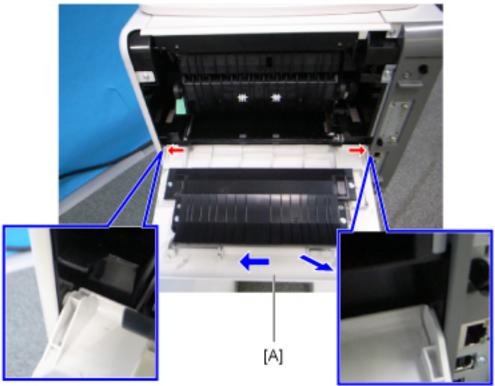


4. By-pass paper sensor [A] (Hooks x 3, 🗊 x 1).

4.8 DUPLEX

4.8.1 DUPLEX UNIT

1. Open the rear cover.



m020r010

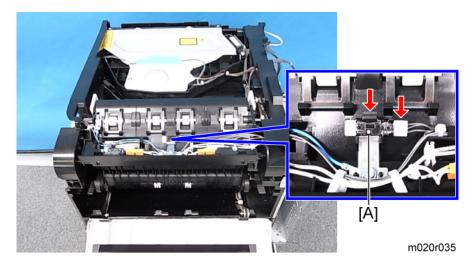
2. Duplex unit [A] (Rear cover) (Hooks x 2).

🔸 Note

• To remove the rear cover easily, release the right hook while pushing the cover against the left side of mainframe lightly, and then pull the right corner out. Then, remove the whole rear cover.

4.8.2 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR

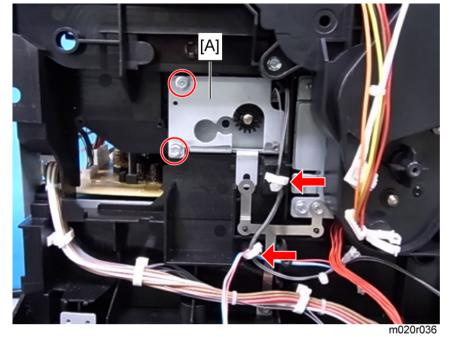
- 1. Right cover (p.4-3)
- 2. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 3. Upper cover (IP p.4-6)
- 4. Upper cover part (IP p.4-6)



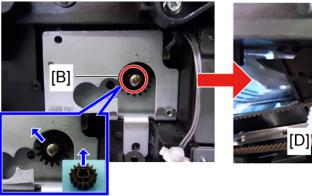
5. Duplex entrance sensor [A] (🗊 x 1, hook x 1).

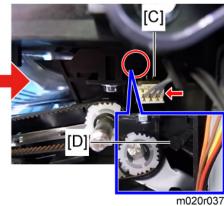
4.8.3 DUPLEX RELAY SENSOR

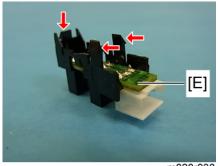
- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)
- 3. Controller box (IP p.4-44)
- 4. Rear cover (p.4-9)
- 5. Duplex motor (p.4-75)



6. Remove 2 screws and release 2 hooks.







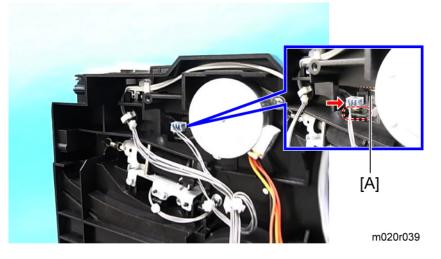
m020r038

- 7. Lift up the stopper on the gear (the direction indicated by the blue arrows) with a small screwdriver, and then remove the gear [B].
- 8. Duplex motor gear assembly [A]
- 9. Disconnect the connector [C].
- 10. Remove the Duplex relay sensor [E], being careful not to snag the feeler [D] as you remove it. (Hooks x 3)

4.9 PAPER EXIT

4.9.1 PAPER OVERFLOW SENSOR

- 1. Right cover (p.4-3)
- 2. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 3. Upper cover (IP p.4-6)
- 4. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)
- 5. Controller box (IP p.4-44)



6. Paper overflow sensor [A] (🖾 x 1, hooks x 3).

🔸 Note

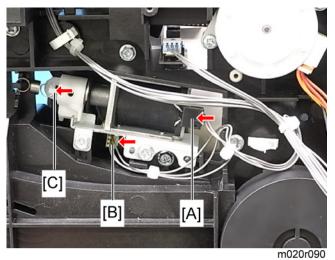
- Remove the paper overflow sensor while lifting the feeler up.
- Use a small minus screwdriver to release the hooks of the sensor.

When reinstalling the Paper Overflow Sensor:

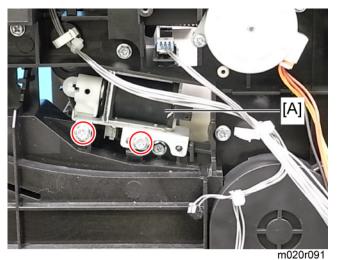
Make sure the feeler is fitted into the sensor's notch.

4.9.2 PAPER EXIT SENSOR

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (IP p.4-50)
- 3. Controller box (IP p.4-50)



4. 2 connectors [A], [B] and the spring [C].



5. Duplex junction solenoid [A] ($\overset{\textcircled{}}{\bullet}$ x 2).



6. Paper exit sensor [A] (\mathfrak{C} x 1, hooks x 3).

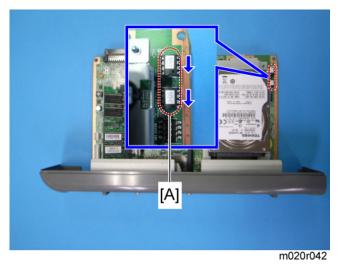
4.10 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

4.10.1 CONTROLLER BOARD

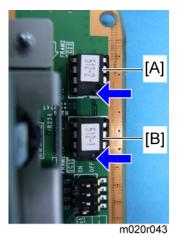


m020r004

1. Remove the controller board [B] (Knob screw x 2 [A]).



2. Remove the 2 NVRAMs [A] if replacing the controller board.

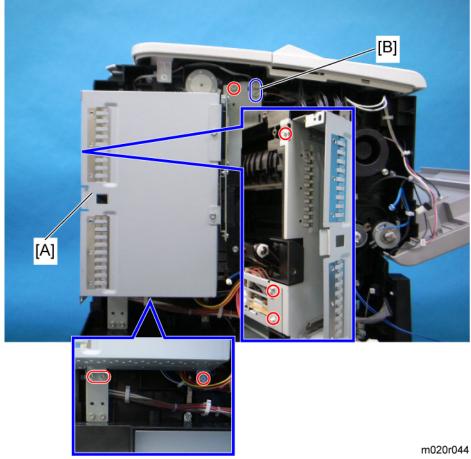


V Note

- . Remove NVRAMs from the old controller board and insert them on the new board. NVRAMs have an inserting direction. Orient the notches on the NVRAMs as shown by the arrows.
- Reinsert NVRAMs into the original position. Location [A] is for an NVRAM labeled . "512-2" and location [B] is for an NVRAM labeled "512-1".
- The screws on the controller board are knob screws. Gently turn these screws • when removing the controller board.
- Pull on the handle to remove the controller board from the machine. .

4.10.2 CONTROLLER BOX

- 1. Left cover (1 p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)



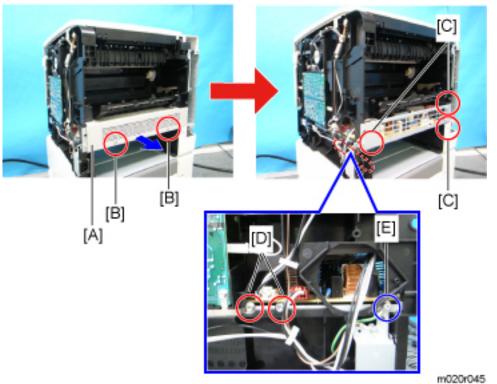
3. Controller box [A] (🖗 x 9).

🔸 Note

Screws [B] are different from other seven screws.

4.10.3 PSU AND PSU COVER

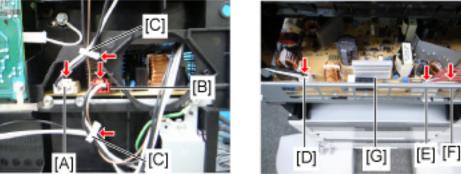
- 1. Right cover (p.4-3)
- 2. Fusing unit (p.4-17)
- 3. Control Board unit (p.4-5)
- 4. Rear Cover (1 p.4-9)



- 5. PSU cover [A] (🌮 x 2 [B]).
- 6. 6 screws [C], [D], [E].

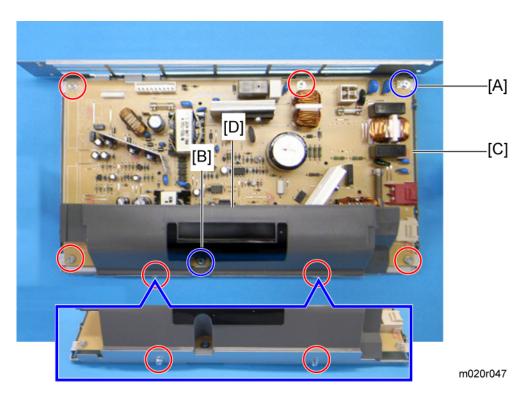
Vote Note

• One screw [E] is different from the other five screws.



m020r046

7. PSU assembly [G] (All connectors [A], [B], [D], [E], [F], 🛱 x 2 [C]).



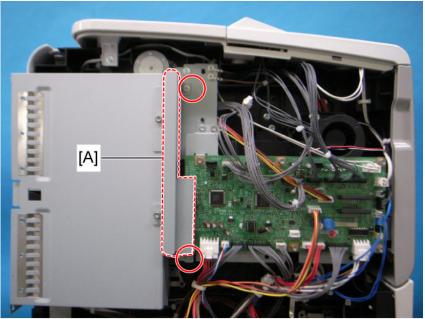
- 8. PSU [C] (🌮 x 6)
- 9. PSU protection cover [D] (2 x 2).

Vote Note

• Two screws [A], [B] are different from the other four screws.

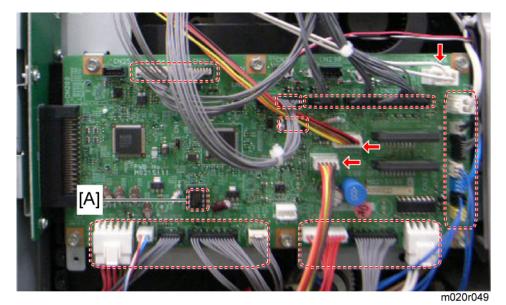
4.10.4 ENGINE BOARD

1. Left cover (p.4-5)



m020r048

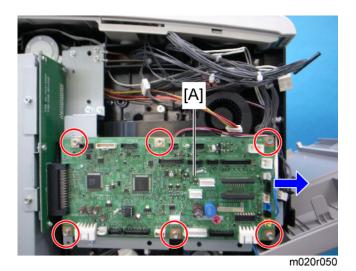
2. Control unit connector cover [A] (2 x 2).



- 3. Disconnect all connectors on the Engine board.
- 4. Open the front cover if closed.

🛨 Important

 When replacing the engine board, remove the EEPROM [A] from the old engine board and install it on the new board.



5. Slide the engine board [A] in the direction indicated by the arrow and remove it (\cancel{x} x 6).

When installing a new engine board

- 1. Remove the EEPROM from the old engine board.
- 2. Install the EEPROM on the new engine board.
- 3. Reassemble the machine.
- 4. Turn on the main power of the machine.
- 5. "SC995-01" occurs.
- 6. Enter the SP mode, and then select SP5-811-004.
- 7. Enter the serial number with SP5-811-004, and then exit the SP mode.
- 8. Turn the main power of the machine off and on.

🔸 Note

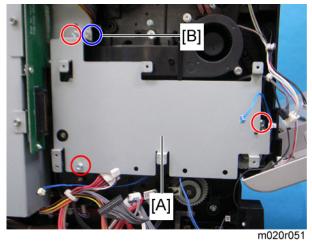
 Make sure you print out the SMC reports ("SP Mode Data" and "Logging Data") before you replace the EEPROM.

ACAUTION

 Keep the EEPROM away from any objects that can cause static electricity. Static electricity can damage EEPROM data.

4.10.5 ENGINE BOARD BRACKET

1. Engine board (p.4-47)



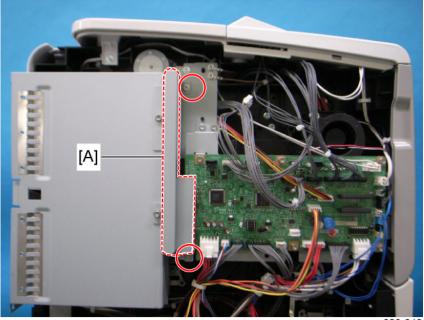
2. Engine board bracket [A] (F x 4).

Vote Note

• One screw [B] is different from the other three screws.

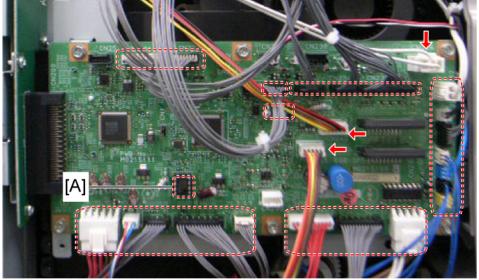
4.10.6 ENGINE BOARD WITH BRACKET

1. Left cover (p.4-5)



m020r048

2. Control unit connector cover [A] (2 x 2)

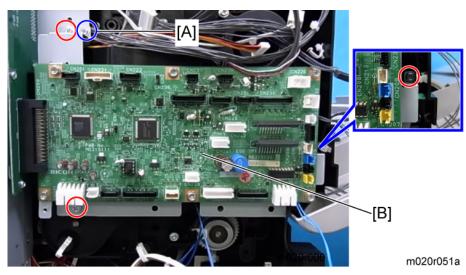


m020r049

3. Disconnect all connectors on the engine board.

🛨 Important

 When replacing the engine board, remove the EEPROM [A] from the old engine board and install it on the new board.



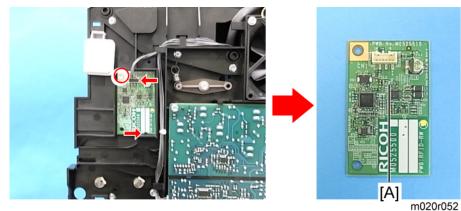
4. Engine board with bracket [B] (🌮 x 4).

Vote Note

• One screw [A] is different from the other 3 screws.

4.10.7 RFID (RADIO FREQUENCY ID)

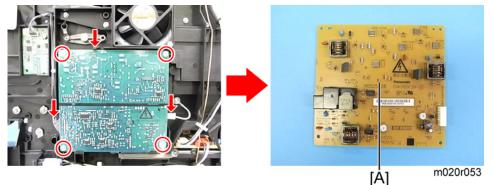
1. Right cover (p.4-3)



2. RFID [A] (🗊 x 1, 🖗 x 1, hook x 1).

4.10.8 HVPS (HIGH VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY)

1. Right cover (p.4-3)

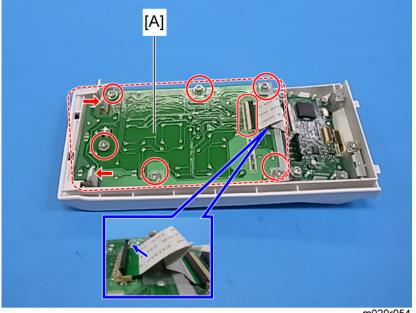


2. Remove the HVPS unit [A] (🗗 x 2, 🖗 x 4, hook x 1).

4.10.9 OPERATION PANEL UNIT

Keyboard Unit

1. Operation panel (p.4-10)

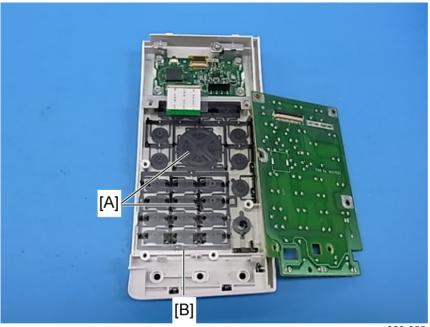


m020r054

2. Keyboard unit [A] (🖾 x 1, 🖗 x 6, hooks x 2).

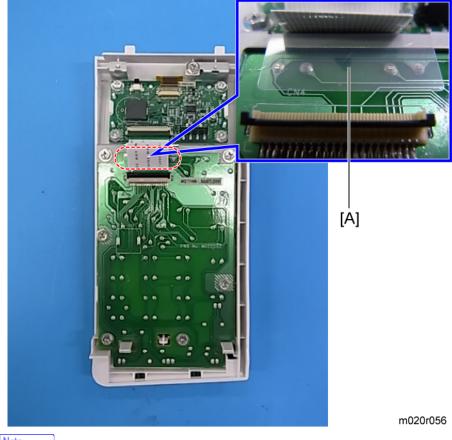
V Note

- Lift up the black tab on the connector to release the cable.
- The flat cable connector is very small and fragile. Take extra care when releasing it.



m020r055

3. Keys [A] and the insulation sheet [B] are now accessible.



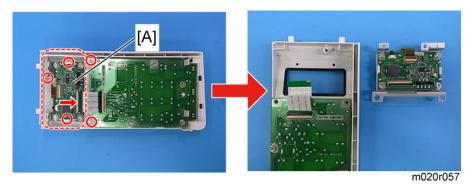
eplacemen and Adjustment

Vote Note

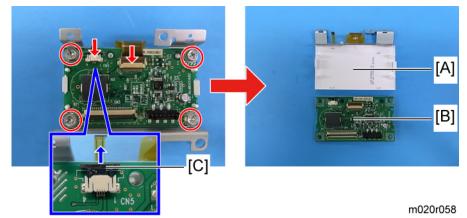
- When reinstall the Keyboard unit:
- The insulation sheet [A] must be located between the flat cable and the keyboard unit.

Operation panel controller and LCD unit

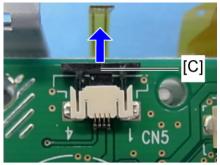
1. Operation panel (p.4-10)



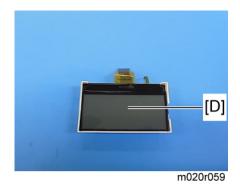
2. LCD assy [A] (🗊 x 1, 🖗 x 3, hooks x 2).



3. Remove the operation panel controller [B] from LCD unit [A] (🖽 x 2, 🖗 x 4).



m020r060



🔸 Note

- To release the left side flat cable, pull out the black tab [C] of the connector half way.
- Do not touch the LCD unit surface [D].

4.10.10NVRAM AND EEPROM

NVRAMs

- 1. Print the SMC data ("ALL") using SP5-990-001 (IP p.5-10).
- 2. Turn off the main switch.
- 3. Remove the VM card from SD card Slot 2 (Lower).
- 4. Insert a blank SD card into Slot 2 (Lower), and then turn on the main power switch.
- 5. Upload the NVRAM data to the blank SD card using SP5-824-001 (IP p.5-10, p.5-107).
- 6. Turn off the main power switch, and then unplug the AC power cord.
- 7. Remove the SD Card containing the NVRAM data from Slot 2 (Lower).
- 8. Replace the NVRAMs on the Controller Board with a new ones (p.4-43).
- 9. Plug in the AC power cord, and then turn on the main power switch

🛨 Important

- When you do this, SC995-02 (Defective NVRAM) will be displayed. However, do
 not turn off the main power switch. Continue this procedure.
- 10. Re-insert the SD card that you removed in Step 7 back into Slot 2 (Lower)
- 11. Download the old NVRAM data from the SD card onto the new NVRAMs using

SP5-825-001 (IF p.5-108).

Vote Note

- This will take about 2 or 3 minutes.
- 12. Turn off the main power switch, and then remove the SD card from Slot 2 (Lower).
- 13. Insert the VM card into Slot 2 (Lower).
- 14. Turn on the main power switch.
- 15. Print the SMC data ("ALL") using SP5-990-001 (I p.5-10, and make sure that it matches the SMC data you printed out in Step 1 above (except for the value of the total counter). ↓ Note
 - The value of the total counter is reset to "0" when the NVRAMs are replaced.

🛨 Important

- Do all of the following if SP5-824-001 (P p.5-107) and SP5-825-001 (P p.5-108) cannot be performed for some reason:
- 1. Replace the NVRAMs and Security SD card together as a set with new ones.
- 2. Manually enter all data on the SMC report (factory settings).
- 3. Install the new Security SD card functions (Data overwrite and HDD encryption). See RTB #RGene039 for the procedure.

EEPROM

- 1. Make sure that you have the SMC report (factory settings). This report comes with the machine.
- 2. Output the SMC data (IF SP5-990-001) if possible.
- 3. Turn the main switch off.
- 4. Install an SD card into SD card slot 2 (Lower). Then turn the main power on.
- 5. Copy the EEPROM data to an SD card (IF SP5-824-001) if possible.
- 6. Turn off the main switch. Then unplug the power cord.
- 7. Replace the EEPROM on the engine board and reassemble the machine.
- 8. Plug in the power cord. Then turn the main switch on.
- 9. Select a paper-size type (IF SP5-131-001).
- 10. Specify the serial number and destination code of the machine.

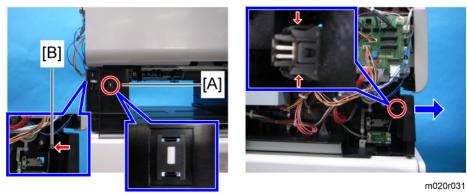
Vote Note

- Contact your supervisor for details on how to enter the serial number and destination code.
- SC 999 or "Fusing Unit Setting Error" will be shown until the serial number and destination code are correctly programmed.
- 11. Turn the main switch off and on.
- 12. Copy the data from the SD card to the EEPROM (SP5-825-001) if you have successfully copied them to the SD card.
- 13. Turn the main switch off. Then remove the SD card from SD card slot 2 (Lower).
- 14. Turn the main switch on.
- 15. Specify the SP and UP mode settings.
- 🛨 Important
 - If SP5-824-001 (EEPROM Data Upload) and SP5-825-001 (EEPROM Data Download) cannot be performed for some reason, manually enter all data on the SMC report (factory settings).

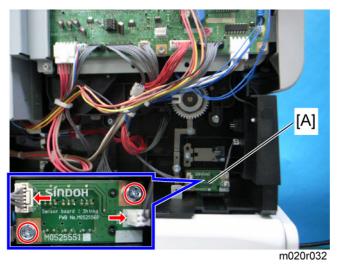
4.11 SWITCHES

4.11.1 TRAY SET SWITCH AND PAPER SIZE DETECTION SENSOR BOARD

- 1. Pull out the standard paper tray unit.
- 2. Left cover (p.4-5)



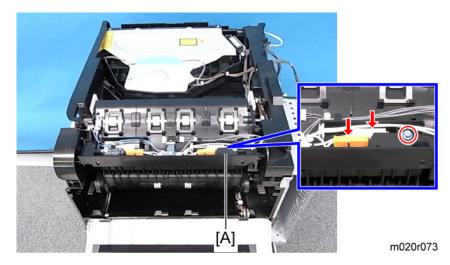
3. Release hooks and pull the tray set switch [A] out as indicated by the arrows (1 [B] x 1, hooks x 2).



4. Paper size detection sensor board [A] (🖽 x 2, 🖗 x 2)

4.11.2 REAR-LEFT INTERLOCK SWITCH

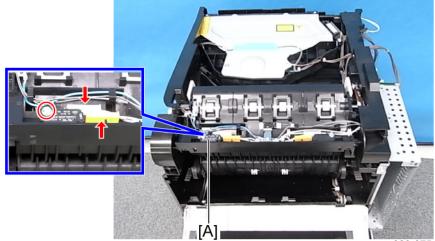
- 1. Right cover (**P**p.4-3)
- 2. Left cover (p.4-3)
- 3. Upper cover (IP p.4-6)
- 4. Upper cover part (IP p.4-6)



5. Rear-left interlock switch [A] (\Re x 1, 🖾 x 2).

4.11.3 REAR-RIGHT INTERLOCK SWITCH

- 1. Right cover (p.4-3)
- 2. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 3. Upper cover (IP p.4-6)
- 4. Upper cover part (IP p.4-6)

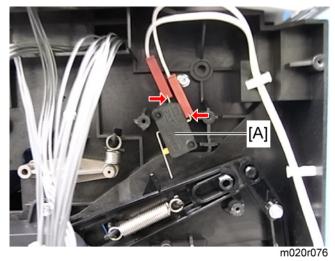


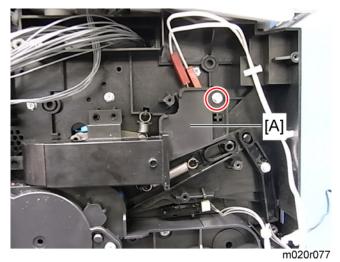
m020r075

5. Rear-right interlock switch [A] ($\hat{P} \times 1$, \mathfrak{C} x 2).

4.11.4 FRONT INTERLOCK SWITCH

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)
- 3. AIO fan (IP p.4-65)



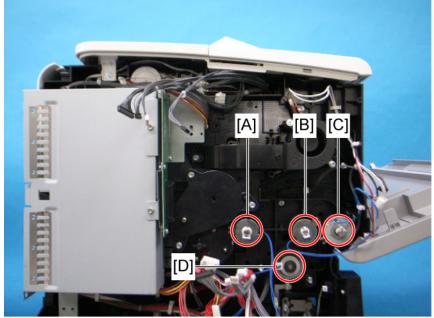


5. Front interlock switch [A] (12 x 2).

4.12 CLUTCHES

4.12.1 OVERVIEW

There are 4 clutches on the machine as shown in the following photograph.



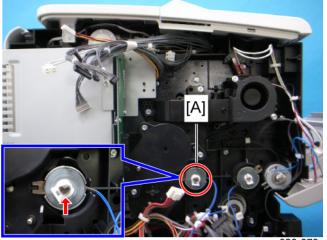
m020r078

[A]: Registration clutch

- [B]: Relay clutch
- [C]: By-pass feed clutch
- [D]: Paper Feed clutch

4.12.2 REGISTRATION CLUTCH

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)

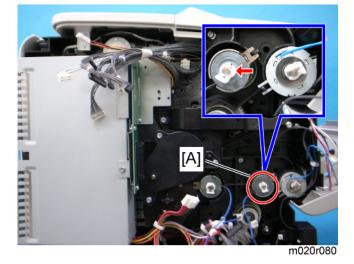


m020r079

3. Registration clutch [A] (0 x 1).

4.12.3 RELAY CLUTCH

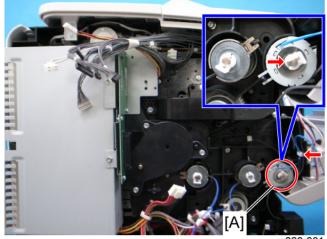
- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)



3. Relay clutch [A] (∅ x 1).

4.12.4 BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)



m020r081

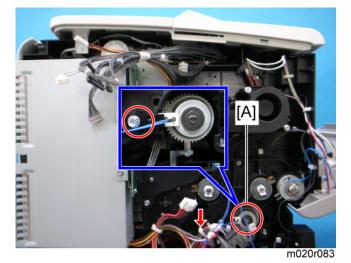
3. By-pass feed clutch [C] (協 x 1, ∅ x 1).

Vote

 The by-pass feed clutch can rotate only one revolution. A forced rotation over one revolution may cause trouble.

4.12.5 PAPER FEED CLUTCH

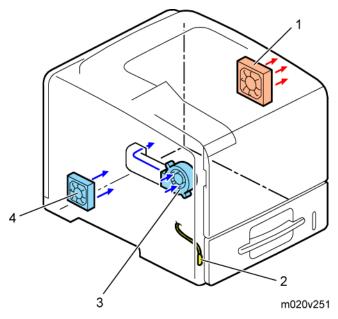
- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)



3. Paper feed clutch [A] (🛱 x 1, 🕴 x 1)

4.13 FANS

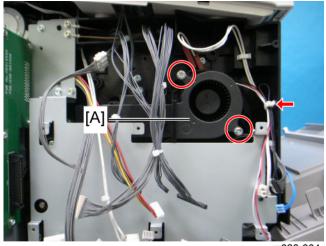
4.13.1 OVERVIEW



- 1. Exhaust fan
- 2. Transfer thermistor (temperature sensor)
- 3. AIO fan (Blower)
- 4. PSU fan

4.13.2 AIO FAN

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board (IP p.4-47)



m020r084

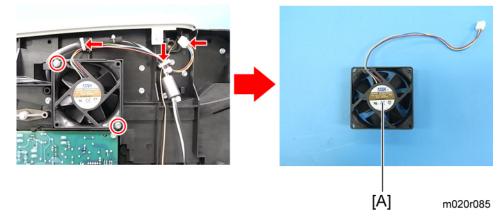
3. AlO fan [A] (🗟 x 1, 🕴 x 2).

Vote Note

• Make sure to mount the AIO fan properly. Otherwise, air will blow the wrong way.

4.13.3 EXHAUST FAN

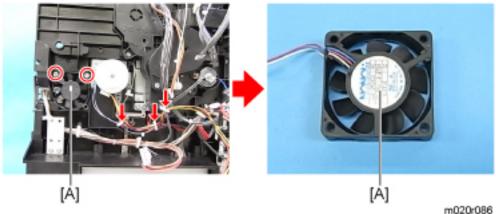
1. Right cover (p.4-3)



2. Exhaust fan [A] (🗟 x 2, 🗊 x 1, 🖗 x 2).

4.13.4 PSU FAN

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)
- 3. Controller box (IP p.4-44)



4. PSU fan [A] (🗟 x 2, 🗊 x 1, 🕴 x 2).

4.13.5 TRANSFER THERMISTOR

- 1. Pull the standard paper tray out.
- 2. Left cover (p.4-5)



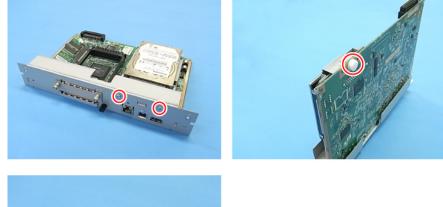
m020r087

3. Transfer thermistor [A] (B x 2, I x 1).

4.14 OTHER ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

4.14.1 HDD (OPTION FOR M020)

1. Controller board (p.4-43)



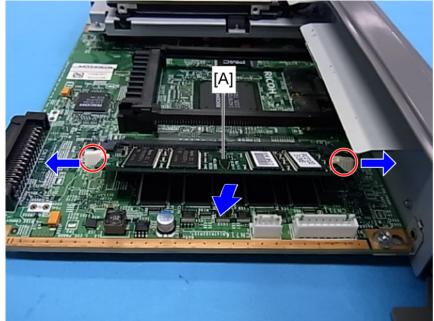


2. HDD [A] (🖗 x 3, 🖽 x 1).

m020r088

4.14.2 DIMM (OPTION FOR M020)

1. Controller board (p.4-43).

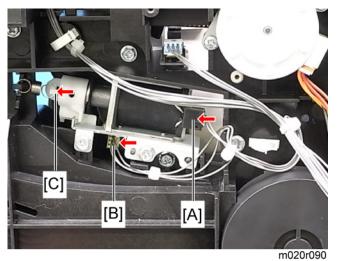


m020r089

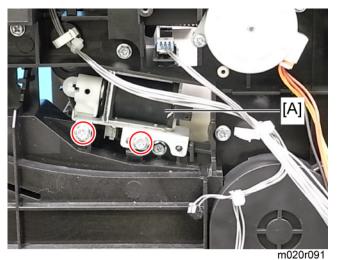
- Release 2 snaps and lift the DIMM [A] up, and then remove the DIMM [A].
 Important.
 - Do not touch the contacts of DIMM. That could cause a bad contact.

4.14.3 DUPLEX JUNCTION SOLENOID

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board bracket (IP p.4-47)
- 3. Controller board box (p.4-44)



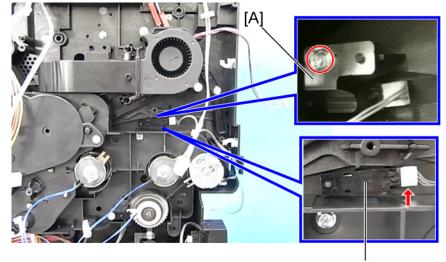
4. 2 connectors [A], [B] and the spring [C].



5. Duplex junction solenoid [A] ($\overset{\textcircled{}}{\bullet}$ x 2).

4.14.4 TONER END SENSOR

- 1. AIO unit.
- 2. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 3. Engine board with bracket (IP p.4-50)

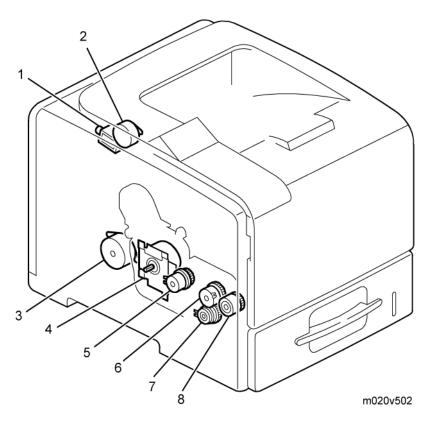


[B] m020r017

- 5. Toner end sensor [B] (1 x 1).

4.15 DRIVE SECTION

4.15.1 OVERVIEW

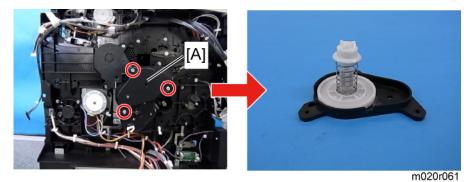


Replacemer and Adjustment

- 1. Duplex junction solenoid
- 2. Feed exit motor
- 3. Duplex motor
- 4. Main motor
- 5. Registration clutch
- 6. Relay clutch
- 7. Paper clutch
- 8. By-pass feed clutch

4.15.2 MAIN MOTOR GEAR ASSY

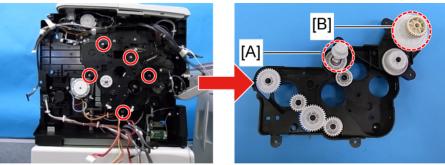
- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)
- 3. Controller box (IP p.4-44)
- 4. All clutches (p.4-61)
- 5. AIO fan and AIO fan duct (IF p.4-65, IF p.4-60)



6. Central gear assembly [A] (🖗 x 3).

★ Important

• Remove the central gear assembly gently to avoid popping the spring.



m020r062

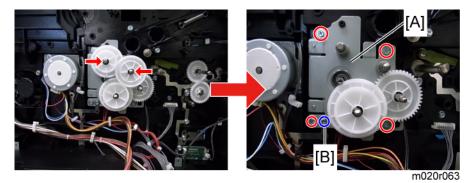
7. Main motor gear assembly (\cancel{r} x 5).

🛨 Important

- Gears [A], [B] contain springs. Take care as they can easily pop off.
- When reinstalling the gear assembly, hold gears [A] [B] with your hands to prevent them from dropping
- Reference the upper right photo when reassembling the gear unit.

4.15.3 MAIN MOTOR

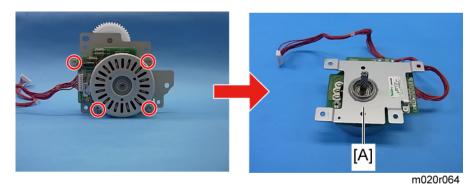
1. Main motor gear assy (p.4-72)



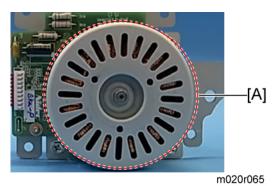
- 2. 2 gears (ⓒ x 2).
- 3. Main motor assembly [A] (2 x 5).

🔸 Note

- One screw [B] is different from the others.
- All connectors have already been disconnected when the engine board had been removed.



4. Main motor [A] (🖗 x 4).



🛨 Important

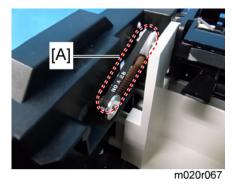
- A protection seal is attached at [A] on the new main motor.
- Peel off this seal when replacing.

4.15.4 PAPER EXIT MOTOR

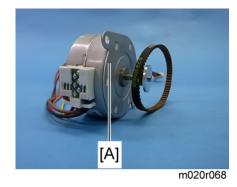
- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Upper cover (IP p.4-6)
- 3. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)
- 4. Controller box (IP p.4-44)



5. Move the exit motor [A] frontward slightly and remove it ($\cancel{P} \times 2$).



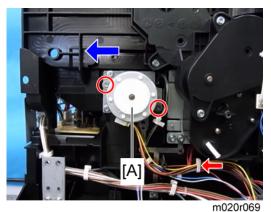
6. Release the belt [A].



7. Remove the paper exit motor [A].

4.15.5 DUPLEX MOTOR

- 1. Left cover (p.4-5)
- 2. Engine board with bracket (p.4-50)
- 3. Controller box (IP p.4-44)
- 4. PSU fan (p.4-66)



5. Duplex motor [A] (🗟 x 1, 🖗 x 2).

🔸 Note

- Move the duplex motor to the left as shown by the arrow to remove it.
- (All connectors were disconnected when the engine board was removed.)

SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE

| REVISION HISTORY | | | | |
|------------------|------|-------------------|--|--|
| Page | Date | Added/Updated/New | | |
| | | None | | |

5. SYSTEM MAINTENANCE REFERENCE

5.1 PRINTER SERVICE MODE

5.1.1 SP1-XXX (SERVICE MODE)

DFU: Denotes "Design or Factory Use". Do not change this value.

| 1001 | Bit Switch | | | | | | |
|-------|------------|--|------------|-----------|--|--|--|
| 001 | Bit Sw | vitch 1 | 0 | 1 | | | |
| bit 0 | | DFU | - | - | | | |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | | | |
| | bit 2 | DFU | - | - | | | |
| | bit 3 | No I/O Timeout | 0: Disable | 1: Enable | | | |
| | | Enable: The MFP I/O Timeout setting will have no effect. I/O Timeouts will never occur. | | | | | |
| | bit 4 | SD Card Save Mode | 0: Disable | 1: Enable | | | |
| | | Enable: Print jobs will be saved to an SD Card in the GW SD slot (IP"Card Save Function" in "System Maintenance" chapter of the Field Service Manual). | | | | | |
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | | | |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | | | |
| | bit 7 | [RPCS,PCL]: Printable area frame border | 0: Disable | 1: Enable | | | |
| | | Enable: The machine prints all RPCS and PCL jobs with a border on the edges of the printable area. | | | | | |

| 1001 | Bit Sw | Bit Switch | | | | |
|------|---|----------------------------------|-----------|------------|--|--|
| 002 | Bit Sw | ritch 2 | 0 | 1 | | |
| | bit 0 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 2 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 3 | [PCL5e/c,PS]: PDL Auto Switching | 0: Enable | 1: Disable | | |
| | Disable: Disables the ability to change the PDL processor mid-job. Some host systems submit jobs that contain both PS and PCL5e/c. If PDL switching is disabled, these jobs will not be printed properly. | | | | | |
| | bit 4 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 7 | DFU | - | - | | |

| 1001 | Bit Sw | Bit Switch | | | |
|------|--------|--|------------|-----------|--|
| 003 | Bit Sw | vitch 3 | 0 | 1 | |
| | bit 0 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 2 | [PCL5e/c]: Legacy HP compatibility | 0: Disable | 1: Enable | |
| | | Enable: Uses the same left margin as older HP models such as HP4000/HP8000. In other words, the left margin defined in the job (usually " <esc>*r0A") will be changed to "<esc>*r1A"</esc></esc> | | | |
| | bit 3 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 4 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 7 | D FU | - | - | |

System Maintenance Reference

| 1001 | Bit Sv | Bit Switch | | | | |
|------|------------------|---|----------|---------|--|--|
| 004 | Bit Switch 4 0 1 | | | | | |
| | bit 0 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 2 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | | IPDS print-side reversal | Disabled | Enabled | | |
| | bit 3 | If this bit switch is enabled, the simplex pages of IPDS jobs will be printed on the front side because of printing on the back side of the page. This might reduce printing speed. | | | | |
| | bit 4 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 7 | DFU | - | - | | |

| 1001 | Bit Sw | Bit Switch | | | |
|--|--------|---|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| 005 | Bit Sw | itch 5 | 0 | 1 | |
| | bit 0 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 1 | Multiple copies if a paper size or type mismatch occurs | 0: Disable (Single copy) | 1: Enable (Multiple copy) | |
| | | If a paper size or type mismatch occurs during copies, only a single copy is output by default can be configured to print all copies even if a | . Using this B | itSw, the device | |
| | bit 2 | Prevent SDK applications from altering the contents of a job. | Disabled | Enabled | |
| If this BitSw is enabled, SDK applications will not be able to data. This is achieved by preventing SDK applications from module called the "GPS Filter". The main purpose of this BitSw is for troubleshootin of SDK applications on data. | | n accessing a | | | |
| | bit 3 | [PS] PS Criteria | Pattern3 | Pattern1 | |
| | | Change the number of PS criterion used determine whether a job is PS data or not. Pattern3: includes most PS commands. Pattern1: A small number of PS tags and hea | | S interpreter to | |
| | bit 4 | Increase max number of the stored jobs to 1000 jobs. | Disable (100) | Enable (1000) | |
| | | Enable: Changes the maximum number of jo HDD via Job Type settings to 1000. The defa | | be stored on the | |
| | bit 5 | Face-up output | Disable | Enable | |
| | | Enable: All print jobs will be output face-up in | the destination | on tray. | |

System Maintenance Reference

| bit 6 | Method for determining the image rotation for the edge to bind on. | 0: Disable | 1: Enable |
|-------|--|------------|-----------------------|
| | If enabled, the image rotation will be performe older models for the binding of pages of mixe The old models are below: - PCL: Pre-04A models - PS/PDF/RPCS:Pre-05S models | | |
| bit 7 | Letterhead mode printing | 0: Disable | 1: Enable (Duplex) |

| 1001 | Bit Switch | | |
|------|-------------------------|---|---|
| 006 | Bit Switch 6 DFU | - | - |

| 1001 | Bit Sw | Bit Switch | | | | |
|------|--|------------|------------|-----------|--|--|
| 007 | Bit Sw | ritch 7 | 0 | 1 | | |
| | | Print path | 0: Disable | 1: Enable | | |
| | bit 0 bit 0 If enabled, simplex pages (in mixed simplex/duplex PS/PCL5 j and the last page of an odd paged duplex job (PS, PCL5, PCL always routed through the duplex unit. Not having to switch pa increases the print speed slightly. | | PCL6), are | | | |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | | |
| | bit 2 | DFU | | | | |
| | bit 3 | DFU | | | | |
| | bit 4 | DFU | | | | |
| | bit 5 | DFU | | | | |
| | bit 7 | DFU | | | | |

| 1001 | Bit Sw | Bit Switch | | | |
|------|--------------|------------|---|---|--|
| 008 | Bit Switch 8 | | 0 | 1 | |
| | bit 0 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 2 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 3 | DFU | | | |
| | bit 4 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - | |
| | bit 7 | DFU | - | - | |



| 1001 | Bit Sw | itch | | |
|------|--|---|---|---------------------------|
| 009 | Bit Sw | ritch 9 | 0 | 1 |
| | | PDL Auto Detection timeout of jobs submitted via USB or Parallel Port (IEEE 1284). | "Disabled (Immediately)" | "Enabled (10 seconds)" |
| | bit 0 | To be used if PDL auto-detection fails. A failur necessarily mean that the job can't be printed whether to time-out immediately (default) upo | I. This bit switch | tells the device |
| | bit 1 | DFU | - | - |
| | bit 2 | Job Cancel | Disabled (Not cancelled) | Enabled (Cancelled) |
| | If this bit switch is enabled, all jobs will be cancelled after a jam occurs. Note: If this bitsw is enabled, printing under the following conditions might result in problems: - Job submission via USB or Parallel Port - Spool printing (WIM >Configuration > Device Settings > System) | | | |
| | bit 3 | DFU | - | - |
| | bit 4 | Timing of the PJL Status ReadBack (JOB END) when printing multiple collated copies. | Disabled | Enabled |
| | This bitsw determines the timing of the PJL USTATUS JOB END sent when multiple collated copies are being printed. 0 (default): JOB END is sent by the device to the client after the first copy has completed printing. This causes the page counter to be incremented after the first copy and then again at the end of the job. 1: JOB END is sent by the device to the client after the last copy has finished printing. This causes the page counter to be incremented at the end of each job. | | ne first copy has nented after the opy has finished | |

| | bit 5 | DFU | - | - |
|--|-------|-----|---|---|
| | bit 6 | DFU | - | - |
| | bit 7 | DFU | - | - |

| 1003 | [Clear Setting] |
|----------|---|
| 1002.001 | Initialize System |
| 1003 001 | Initializes settings in the "System" menu of the user mode. |
| 1003 003 | Delete Program |

| 1004 | [Print Summary] |
|----------|--|
| 1004 001 | Service Summary |
| | Prints the service summary sheet (a summary of all the controller settings). |

| 1005 | [Display Version] |
|----------|--|
| 4005 004 | Printer Version |
| 1005 001 | Displays the version of the controller firmware. |

| 1007 | [Supply Display] | | |
|----------|---|------|---|
| 1007 | Enables or disables the display for information on each supply. | | lay for information on each supply. |
| 1007 006 | Fuser | *CTL | [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: OFF 1: ON |

5.2 ENGINE SERVICE MODE

5.2.1 ENGINE MODE TABLE

| Notation | What it means |
|-------------------------------|---|
| [range/ default /step] | Example: [-9 to +9 / $+3.0$ / 0.1 mm step]. The setting can be adjusted in the range \pm 9, value reset to +3.0 after an NVRAM reset, and the value can be changed in 0.1 mm steps with each key press. |
| DFU | Denotes "Design or Factory Use". Do not change this value. |

SP1-xxx: Feed

| | Lead Edge Reg. | Leading Edge Registration |
|----------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1001 | Adjusts the printing leading edge registration for feeding from the trays and duplex tray using the trimming area pattern (SP5-902-003 No.14). Push [\blacktriangle] or [\blacktriangledown] to select the settings (plus or minus). The specification is 4±2 mm | |
| 1001 001 | By-pass: Plain | |
| 1001 002 | By-pass: Thick1 | |
| 1001 003 | By-pass: Thick2 | |
| 1001 004 | By-pass: Thick3 | |
| 1001 005 | By-pass: Thin | |
| 1001 006 | Tray1: Plain | [-5.0 to +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.1] |
| 1001 007 | Tray1: Thick1 | |
| 1001 008 | Tray1: Thick2 | |
| 1001 009 | Tray1: Thick3 | |
| 1001 010 | Tray1: Thin | |

| 1001 011Tray2: Plain1001 012Tray2: Thick11001 013Tray2: Thick21001 014Tray2: Thick31001 015Tray2: Thin1001 016Tray3: Plain1001 017Tray3: Thick11001 018Tray3: Thick21001 019Tray3: Thick31001 020Tray3: Thick31001 021Tray4: Plain1001 022Tray4: Plain1001 023Tray4: Thick11001 024Tray4: Thick31001 025Tray4: Thick31001 026Duplex: Plain1001 027Duplex: Thick11001 028Duplex: Thick11001 029Tray4: Thick21001 020Tray5: Plain1001 021Tray5: Plain1001 022Tray5: Plain1001 023Tray5: Thick11001 024Tray5: Thick11001 025Tray5: Thick11001 026Tray5: Thick11001 027Tray5: Thick11001 028Tray5: Thick11001 029Tray5: Thick11001 030Tray5: Thick21001 031Tray5: Thick31001 032Tray5: Thick31001 033Tray5: Thick31001 034Tray5: Thick31001 035Tray5: Thick31001 035Tray5: Thick31001 036Tray5: Thick31001 037Tray5: Thick31001 038Tray5: Thick31001 039Tray5: Thick31001 030Tray5: Thick31001 031Tray5: Thick31001 032Tray | | | |
|--|----------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| Interpretation Interpretation 1001 013 Tray2: Thick2 1001 014 Tray2: Thick3 1001 015 Tray2: Thin 1001 016 Tray3: Plain 1001 017 Tray3: Thick1 1001 018 Tray3: Thick2 1001 019 Tray3: Thick2 1001 010 Tray3: Thick2 1001 010 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 021 Tray4: Plain 1001 022 Tray4: Thick1 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick2 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Duplex: Thick2 1001 020 Tray5: Thick1 1001 021 Tray5: Thick2 1001 023 Tray5: Thick2 1001 024 Tray5: Thick2 1001 025 Tray5: Thick2 1001 026 Tray5: Thick2 1001 027 Tray5: Thick2 </td <td>1001 011</td> <td>Tray2: Plain</td> <td></td> | 1001 011 | Tray2: Plain | |
| Interpretation Interpretation 1001 014 Tray2: Thick3 1001 015 Tray2: Thin 1001 016 Tray3: Plain 1001 017 Tray3: Thick1 1001 018 Tray3: Thick2 1001 019 Tray3: Thick2 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 021 Tray3: Thick3 1001 022 Tray4: Plain 1001 023 Tray4: Thick1 1001 024 Tray4: Thick2 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Tray4: Thick3 1001 027 Tray4: Thick3 1001 028 Tray4: Thick1 1001 029 Tray4: Thick2 1001 020 Tray4: Thick3 1001 021 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Duplex: Thick1 1001 026 Duplex: Thick1 1001 027 Duplex: Thick2 1001 028 Tray5: Thick1 1001 030 Tray5: Thick2 1001 031 Tray5: Thick3 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 </td <td>1001 012</td> <td>Tray2: Thick1</td> <td></td> | 1001 012 | Tray2: Thick1 | |
| Instruct No. 1001 015 Tray2: Thin 1001 016 Tray3: Plain 1001 017 Tray3: Thick1 1001 018 Tray3: Thick2 1001 019 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 021 Tray3: Thick1 1001 022 Tray4: Plain 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick2 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Duplex: Thick3 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 020 Tray5: Plain 1001 021 Tray5: Plain 1001 023 Tray5: Thick1 1001 030 Tray5: Thick2 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 031 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 013 | Tray2: Thick2 | |
| 1001 016 Tray3: Plain 1001 017 Tray3: Thick1 1001 018 Tray3: Thick2 1001 019 Tray3: Thick2 1001 019 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 021 Tray4: Plain 1001 022 Tray4: Thick1 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Plain 1001 028 Duplex: Thick1 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 029 Tray5: Thick1 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 031 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 014 | Tray2: Thick3 | |
| 1001 017 Tray3: Thick1 1001 018 Tray3: Thick2 1001 019 Tray3: Thick2 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 021 Tray4: Plain 1001 022 Tray4: Thick1 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Plain 1001 028 Duplex: Thick1 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 029 Tray5: Thick2 1001 030 Tray5: Thick2 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 | 1001 015 | Tray2: Thin | |
| 1001 018 Tray3: Thick2 1001 019 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thick1 1001 021 Tray4: Plain 1001 022 Tray4: Thick1 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 020 Tray5: Thick1 1001 021 Tray5: Thick1 1001 023 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 016 | Tray3: Plain | |
| 1001 019 Tray3: Thick3 1001 020 Tray3: Thin 1001 021 Tray3: Thin 1001 021 Tray4: Plain 1001 022 Tray4: Thick1 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Plain 1001 028 Duplex: Thick1 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 020 Tray5: Thick1 1001 021 Tray5: Thick2 1001 030 Tray5: Thick2 1001 031 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 017 | Tray3: Thick1 | |
| 1001 020 Tray3: Thin 1001 021 Tray4: Plain 1001 022 Tray4: Thick1 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Duplex: Thick1 1001 027 Duplex: Plain 1001 028 Duplex: Thick1 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 018 | Tray3: Thick2 | |
| 1001 021 Tray4: Plain 1001 022 Tray4: Thick1 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick2 1001 025 Tray4: Thick3 1001 026 Tray4: Thick3 1001 027 Tray4: Thick1 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick2 | 1001 019 | Tray3: Thick3 | |
| 1001 022 Tray4: Thick1 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Tray4: Thin 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 020 | Tray3: Thin | |
| 1001 023 Tray4: Thick2 1001 024 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Tray4: Thin 1001 026 Duplex: Thin 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 021 | Tray4: Plain | |
| 1001 024 Tray4: Thick3 1001 025 Tray4: Thin 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 022 | Tray4: Thick1 | |
| 1001 025 Tray4: Thin 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 023 | Tray4: Thick2 | |
| 1001 026 Duplex: Plain 1001 027 Duplex: Thick1 1001 028 Duplex: Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 024 | Tray4: Thick3 | |
| 1001 027 Duplex:Thick1 1001 028 Duplex:Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 025 | Tray4: Thin | [-5.0 to +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.1] |
| 1001 028 Duplex:Thick2 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 026 | Duplex: Plain | |
| 1001 029 Tray5: Plain 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 027 | Duplex:Thick1 | |
| 1001 030 Tray5: Thick1 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 028 | Duplex:Thick2 | |
| 1001 031 Tray5: Thick2 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 029 | Tray5: Plain | |
| 1001 032 Tray5: Thick3 | 1001 030 | Tray5: Thick1 | |
| | 1001 031 | Tray5: Thick2 | |
| 1001 033 Tray5: Thin | 1001 032 | Tray5: Thick3 | |
| | 1001 033 | Tray5: Thin | |

| 1002 | Side to Side Reg. | Side-to-Side Registration |
|------|-------------------|---------------------------|
|------|-------------------|---------------------------|

| | Adjusts the printing side-to-side registration from the 1st paper feed station using the trimming area pattern (SP2-902-003 No.14). Push [\blacktriangle] or [\triangledown] to select the settings (plus or minus). Specification: 0 +/-2.0 mm. | |
|----------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1002 001 | By-pass | |
| 1002 002 | Tray1 | |
| 1002 003 | Tray2 | |
| 1002 004 | Tray3 | [-5.0 to +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm] |
| 1002 005 | Tray4 | |
| 1002 006 | Duplex | |
| 1002 007 | Tray5 | |

| | Regist Buckle | Registration Buckle Adjustment |
|----------|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1003 | Adjusts the relay clutch timing at registration. Relay clutch timing determines the amount of paper buckle at registration. (A "+" setting causes more buckling.) | |
| 1003 001 | By-pass: Plain | |
| 1003 002 | By-pass: Thick1 | |
| 1003 003 | By-pass: Thick2 | |
| 1003 004 | By-pass: Thick3 | |
| 1003 005 | By-pass: Thin | |
| 1003 006 | Tray1: Plain | [–7.0 to +7.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm] |
| 1003 007 | Tray1: Thick1 | |
| 1003 008 | Tray1: Thick2 | |
| 1003 009 | Tray1: Thick3 | |
| 1003 010 | Tray1: Thin | |
| 1003 011 | Tray2: Plain | |

| r | | |
|----------|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1003 012 | Tray2: Thick1 | |
| 1003 013 | Tray2: Thick2 | |
| 1003 014 | Tray2: Thick3 | |
| 1003 015 | Tray2: Thin | |
| 1003 016 | Tray3: Plain | |
| 1003 017 | Tray3: Thick1 | |
| 1003 018 | Tray3: Thick2 | |
| 1003 019 | Tray3: Thick3 | |
| 1003 020 | Tray3: Thin | |
| 1003 021 | Tray4: Plain | |
| 1003 022 | Tray4: Thick1 | |
| 1003 023 | Tray4: Thick2 | |
| 1003 024 | Tray4: Thick3 | |
| 1003 025 | Tray4: Thin | [–7.0 to +7.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm] |
| 1003 026 | Duplex: Plain | |
| 1003 027 | Duplex: Thick1 | |
| 1003 028 | Duplex: Thick2 | |
| 1003 029 | Tray5: Plain | |
| 1003 030 | Tray5: Thick1 | |
| 1003 031 | Tray5: Thick2 | |
| 1003 032 | Tray5: Thick3 | |
| 1003 033 | Tray5: Thin | |

| 1103 | PreRotate Temp | PreRotate Temperature Adjustment |
|----------|----------------|---|
| 1103 001 | PreRotate Temp | Adjusts the prerotate temperature at the Fusing roller. Push [▲] or [♥] to select the settings (plus or minus). [0 to 180 / 135 / 1 deg.] |

| 1105 | Fusing Temp DFU | |
|----------|--|--|
| 1105 | Adjusts the fusing temperatures for printing and standby mode. | |
| 1105 001 | Reload Temp | Adjusts the fusing temperature for reloading. [100 to 180 / 135 / 1 deg.] |
| 1105 002 | Stand-by Temp | Adjusts the fusing temperature for standby mode. [140 to 205 / 175 / 1 deg.] |
| 1105 010 | Print: Plain | Adjusts the fusing temperature for printing Plain paper. [150 to 215 / 200 / 5 deg.] |
| 1105 011 | Print: Thin | Adjusts the fusing temperature for printing Thin paper. [150 to 215 / 170 / 5 deg.] |
| 1105 012 | Print: Thick | Adjusts the fusing temperature for printing Thick paper. [150 to 215 / 195 / 5 deg.] |
| 1105 013 | Print: Small Size | Adjusts the fusing temperature for printing small size paper. [150 to 215 / 190 / 5 deg.] |
| 1105 100 | Ready: LL | Adjusts the fusing temperature for standby mode after reloading (LL). [140 to 205 / 200 / 1 deg.] |

| 1105 101 | Ready: MM | Adjusts the fusing temperature for standby mode after reloading (MM). [140 to 205 / 200 / 1 deg.] |
|----------|-------------|--|
| 1105 102 | Ready: HH | Adjusts the fusing temperature for standby mode after reloading (HH). [140 to 205 / 195 / 1 deg.] |
| 1105 103 | Ready: T AL | Adjusts the fusing temperature for standby mode (AL). [150 to 215 / 190 / 5 deg.] |
| 1105 104 | Ready: T AM | Adjusts the fusing temperature for standby mode (AM). [150 to 215 / 195 / 5 deg.] |
| 1105 105 | Ready: T AH | Adjusts the fusing temperature for standby mode (AH). [150 to 215 / 190 / 5 deg.] |

| 1159 | Fusing Jam | Fusing Jam SC Detection | |
|----------|--------------|---|--|
| 1159 001 | SC Detection | Disables or enables the consecutive jam error for the fusing unit. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] When set to "1" (on), this SC code is issued after the 3rd consecutive jam in the fusing unit. | |

| 1902 | OHP Clutch Rotate OHP Clutch Rotations | | |
|----------|--|---|--|
| 1902 001 | OHP Clutch Rotate | Selects the number of rotations for the bypass feed roller when the paper type is set for "Transparencies". Change this setting to "2" if jams occur frequently when feeding transparencies from the bypass tray. [1 to $2 / 1 / 1$] 1 = 1 rotation , 2 = 2 rotations | |

| 1953 | Switch FAN Ctrl. DFU | - | |
|----------|----------------------|-------------------------|--|
| 1953 001 | Main FAN | [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] | |

SP2-xxx: Drum

| 2001 | Charge Voltage DFU | Charge Roller Bias setting |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| 2001 001 | Charge Voltage | Adjusts the voltage applied to the charge roller for printing. [1000 to 2000 / 1550 /1 V] |

| 2103 | Erase Mag Adjust | Adjust the erase margin by deleting image data at the margins. |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 2103 001 | Lead Edge Width | [0 to 9.9 / 2.0 / 0.1 mm/ step] |
| 2103 002 | Trail. Edge Width | [0 to 9.9 / 4.0 / 0.1 mm/ step] |
| 2103 003 | Left | [0 to 9.9 / 2.0 / 0.1 mm/ step] |
| 2103 004 | Right | [0 to 9.9 / 2.0 / 0.1 mm/ step] |

| 2112 | Main-scan Mag. | Main Scan Magnification | |
|----------|----------------|--|--|
| 2112 001 | Main-scan Mag. | Adjusts the main scan magnification. [-0.5 to 0.5 / 0.0 / 0.1 %] | |

| 2113 | Sub-scan Mag. | Sub Scan Magnification |
|----------|---------------|---|
| 2113 001 | Sub-scan Mag. | Adjusts the sub scan magnification. [-0.5 to 0.5 / 0.0 / 0.1 %] |

| 2201 | DV Roller Bias DFU | Development roller bias adjustment | |
|----------|---------------------------|---|--|
| 2201 001 | DV Roller Bias | Adjusts the development bias for printing. [100 to 800 / 600 / 1 V] | |

| 2301 | Transfer Current Adj. | Transfer roller Current Adjustment |
|----------|-----------------------|--|
| 2301 001 | Transfer Current Adj. | Adjusts the correction current applied to the transfer roller. [-3 to +3 / 0 / 1 uA] |

| 2902 | Test Pattern | | Printing Test Patterns | | |
|----------|--------------|-------------------------------|---|----|-------------------------------------|
| | Test Pattern | | Prints the test patterns. Select the number of the test pattern that you want to print. When adjusting the printing registration, select no.14 (Trimming Area Pattern) [0 to 30 / 0 / 1] | | |
| | 0 | None | | 16 | Hound's Tooth Check (Horizontal) |
| | 1 | Vertical Line (1 dot) | | 17 | Band (Horizontal) |
| | 2 | Vertical Line (2 dot) | | 18 | Band (Vertical) |
| | 3 | Horizontal Line (1 dot) | | 19 | Checker Flag Pattern |
| | 4 | Horizontal Line (2 dot) | | 20 | Density Pattern |
| 2902 003 | 5 | Grid Vertical Line | | 21 | Full Dot Pattern |
| | 6 | Grid Horizontal Line | | 22 | Full White Pattern |
| | 7 | Grid Pattern Small | | 23 | Grayscale (Horizontal Margin) |
| | 8 | Grid Pattern Large | | 24 | Grayscale White (Horizontal Margin) |
| | 9 | Argyle Pattern Small | | 25 | Grayscale (Vertical Margin) |
| | 10 | Argyle Pattern Large | | 26 | Grayscale White(Vertical Margin) |
| | 11 | Independent Pattern (1dot) | | 27 | Grayscale |
| | 12 | Independent Pattern (2dot) | 1 | 28 | Grayscale White |

| 13 | Independent Pattern (4dot) | 29 | Grayscale (Cross Margin) |
|----|-----------------------------------|----|-------------------------------|
| 14 | Trimming Area | 30 | Grayscale White(Cross Margin) |
| 15 | Hound's Tooth Check (Vertical) | | |

SP3-xxx: Process

| 3926 | Filming Prevent | Prevention of Filming | | | |
|----------|-----------------|---|--|--|--|
| 3926 001 | Filming Prevent | [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: No 1: Yes If set to "Yes": This is done every 50 prints, for 0.2 s, to lubricate the cleaning blade. The charge roller voltage is cut, and toner is transferred to the cleaning blade. If the 50-print interval is reached during a job, printing stops and this process is done. Set this to yes to prevent the following: Grey banding parallel to the paper feed direction Cleaning blade flipping due to friction between blade and drum Noise due to friction between blade and drum | | | |

SP5-xxx: Mode

| 5001 | All Indicators On | |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 5001 001 | All Indicators On | Turns on or off the all indicators on the operation panel. |

| 5024 | mm/inch Selection | Measuring Unit Selection mm/inch |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 5024 001 | 0:mm 1:inch | Selects the unit of measurement. After selection, turn the main power switch off and on. 0: mm(Europe/Asia) 1: inch(North America) |

| 5051 | Refill Toner Disp | Toner Refill Detect Display |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5051 001 | Refill Toner Disp | This SP switches on/off the message that prompts the operator when it is necessary to replenish toner in the machine. 0: ON (Message displayed) 1: OFF (Message not displayed) |

| 5055 | DisplayIPaddress | Display IP Address |
|----------|------------------|---|
| 5055 001 | DisplayIPaddress | Switches the banner display of the IP address off and on. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: No 1: Yes For example, if this SP is switched on, the IP address will be displayed below "Ready" while the printer is in standby mode: Ready 169.254.187.055 |

System laintenance Reference

| 5056 | Coverage Counter | |
|----------|------------------|---|
| 5056 001 | Coverage Counter | Display or does not display the coverage counter on the LCD. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Not displayed 1: Displayed |

| 5169 | CE Login | Login as a CE |
|----------|----------|---|
| 5169 001 | CE Login | If you will change the printer bit switches, you must 'log in' to service mode with this SP before you go into the printer SP mode. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Off. Printer bit switches cannot be adjusted. 1: On. Printer bit switches can be adjusted. |

| 5195 | Limitless SW | |
|----------|--------------|-------------------------|
| 5195 001 | Limitless SW | [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

| 5302 | Set Time | Local time setting |
|----------|-----------------|---|
| 5302 002 | Time Difference | Sets the time clock for the local time. This setting is done at the factory before delivery. The setting is GMT expressed in minutes. [-1440 to 1440 / -300 / 1 min. step] Japan: +540 (Tokyo) NA: -300 (NY) EU: +60 (Paris) CH: +480 (Peking) TW: +480 (Taipei) AS: +480 (Hong Kong) KO: +540 (Korea) |

| | Summer Time | Summer time start/end Setting |
|------------|--|---|
| | Lets you set the machine to adjust its date and time automatically with the change to Daylight Savings time in the spring and back to normal time in the fall. This SP lets you set these items: Day and time to go forward automatically in April. Day and time to go back automatically in October. Set the length of time to go forward and back automatically. The settings for 002 and 003 are done with 8-digit numbers: | |
| | Digits | Meaning |
| | Month. 4: April, 10: October (for monthand)1st, 2ndMonth. 4: April, 10: October (for monthand)the first digit of 0 cannot be input, so eight-digit setting for 002 or 003 bedseven-digit setting) | |
| 5307 | 3rd | Day of the week. 0: Sunday, 1: Monday |
| | 4th | The number of the week for the day selected at the 3rd digit. If "0" is selected for "Sunday", for example, and the selected Sunday is the start of the 2nd week, then input a "2" for this digit. |
| hex code). | | Example: 00:00 (Midnight) = 00, 01:00 (1 a.m.) |
| | 7th The number of hours to change the tir hour: 1 | |
| | 8th | If the time change is not a whole number (1.5 hours for example), digit 8 should be 3 (30 minutes). |
| 5307 001 | ON/OFF | Enables/disables the settings for 002 and 003. [0 or 1 / 1 (NA/EU), 0 (AA/CHN) / -] 0: OFF 1: ON |

| 5307 003 | Start | The start of summer time. |
|----------|-------|---------------------------|
| 5307 004 | End | The end of summer time. |

| | Access Control | New user codes addition setting | |
|----------|---------------------------|---|--|
| 5401 | | etermines whether the machine adds new user codes in the User anagement Tool in Smart Net Monitor. | |
| 5401 104 | Authentication Time | Specifies the time for the authentication timeout. 0: 60 seconds 1 to 255: displayed time (seconds) [0 to 255 / 0 / 1 second] | |
| 5401 162 | Extend Certification | Extends the certification of user. 0x00: No extension 0x01: Extension [0x00 to 0xFF / 0x00 / 1] | |
| 5401 200 | SDK1 UniqueID | | |
| 5401 201 | SDK1 Certification Method | | |
| 5401 210 | SDK2 UniqueID | "SDK" is the "Software Development Kit". This | |
| 5401 211 | SDK2 Certification Method | data can be converted from SAS (VAS) when | |
| 5401 220 | SDK3 UniqueID | installed or uninstalled. (DFU) | |
| 5401 221 | SDK3 Certification Method | | |
| 5401 230 | SDK Certification | | |

| | | Enalbes or disables the log out confirmation option. |
|----------|---------------|--|
| | | Bit 0: Log out confirmation option |
| | | 0 : Enable |
| | Detail Option | 1: Disable |
| 5404 240 | | Selects the automatic log out time. |
| 5401 240 | | Bit 1 and 2: Automatic log out timer |
| | | reduction |
| | | 00: 60 seconds |
| | | 01: 10 seconds |
| | | 10: 20 seconds |
| | | 11: 30 seconds |

| 5404 | User Code Clear | User Code Clearance |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 5404 001 | User Code Clear | Clears the counts for the user codes assigned by the key operator to restrict the use of the machine. Press [OK] to clear. |

| 5411 | LDAP-Certification | Loading application certification setting |
|----------|--------------------------|--|
| 5411 004 | Easy Certification | Determines whether easy LDAP certification is done. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 1: On 0: Off |
| 5411 005 | Password Null Not Permit | This SP is referenced only when SP5411-004 is set to "1" (On). [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Password NULL not permitted. 1: Password NULL permitted. |
| 5411 006 | Detail Option | - |

system laintenance Reference

| 5413 | Lockout Setting | Local address book account lock |
|----------|---------------------|--|
| 5413 001 | Lockout On/Off | Turns on or off the account lock for the local address book account. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF 1:ON |
| 5413 002 | Lockout Threshold | Sets a limit on the frequency of lockouts for account lockouts. [1 to 10 / 5 / 1] |
| 5413 003 | Cancellation On/Off | Determines whether the system waits the prescribed time for input of a correct user ID and password after an account lockout has occurred. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Off (no wait time, lockout not cancelled) 1: On (system waits, cancels lockout if correct user ID and password are entered. |
| 5413 004 | Cancellation Time | Determines the length of time that the system waits for correct input of the user ID and password after a lockout has occurred. This setting is used only if SP5413-3 is set to "1" (on). [1 to 9999 / 60 / 1 min.] |

| 5414 | Access Mitigation | Consecutive access mitigation |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5414 001 | Mitigation On/Off | Permits or does not permit consecutive access to the machine with the same ID and password. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Off (Permitted) 1: On (Not permitted) |
| 5414 002 | Mitigation Time | Sets the prohibiting time for consecutive access to the machine with the same ID and password. [0 to 60 / 15 / 1 min] |

| 5415 | Password Attack | Password attacking threshold setting |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 5415 001 | Permission Number | Sets the threshold number of attempts to attack the system with random passwords to gain illegal access to the system. [0 to 100 / 30 / 1 times] |
| 5415 002 | Detect Time | Sets a detection time to count a password attack. [1 to 10 / 5 / 1 sec] |

System //aintenance Reference

| 5416 | Access Info | Access Information |
|----------|------------------|--|
| 5416 001 | User Max Num | Sets the number of users for the access exclusion and password attack detection function. [50 to 200 / 200 / 1] |
| 5416 002 | Password Max Num | Sets the number of passwords for the access exclusion and password attack detection function. [50 to 200 / 200 / 1] |
| 5416 003 | Monitor interval | Sets the interval of watching out for user information and passwords. [1 to 10 / 3 / 1 second] |

| 5417 | Access Attack | Access limitation setting |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| 5417 001 | Permission Num | Sets a limit on access attempts to prevent password cracking. [0 to 500 / 100 / 1] |
| 5417 002 | Attack Detect Time | Sets a detection time to count password cracking. [10 to 30 / 10 / 1 second] |
| 5417 003 | Cert Waite | Sets the wait time to slow down the speed of certification when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected. [0 to 9 / 3 / 1 second] |
| 5417 004 | Attack Max Num | Sets a limit on the number of requests received for certification in order to slow down the certification speed when an excessive number of access attempts have been detected. [50 to 200 / 200 / 1] |

| | User Auth | User Authentication |
|----------|--|---|
| 5420 | These settings should be done with the System Administrator. Note These functions are enabled only after the user access feature been enabled. | |
| 5420 041 | Printer | Determines whether certification is required before a user can use the printer application. [0 to 1/0/1] 0: ON 1: OFF |
| 5420 051 | SDK1 | Determines whether certification is required |
| 5420 061 | SDK2 | before a user can use the SDK application. [0 or 1/ 0 / 1] |
| 5420 071 | SDK3 | 0: ON 1: OFF |

| 5481 | Auth. Error Code | Authentication failure code setting |
|----------|--|---|
| | This SP code determines how the authentication failures are displayed. | |
| 5481 001 | System Log Disp | Determines whether an error code appears in the system log after a user authentication failure occurs. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF 1: ON |

| 5501 | PM Alarm Interval | PM Alarm interval setting |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 5501 001 | Printout | [0 to 9999 / 0 / 1] 0: Alarm off 1 to 9999: Alarm goes off when Value (1 to 9999) >= PM counter |

| 5504 | Jam Alarm | Jam level alarm setting |
|----------|-----------|---|
| 5504 001 | Jam Alarm | Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document misfeeds are not included). [0 to 3 / 3 / 1] 0: Zero (Off) 1: Low (2.5K jams) 2: Medium (3K jams) 3: High (6K jams) |

| 5505 | Error Alarm DFU | Error Alarm level setting |
|----------|------------------------|--|
| 5505 001 | Error Alarm | Sets the error alarm level. [0 to 255 / 25 / 100 copies/ 1 step] |

| 5507 | Supply Alarm | Paper supply control call setting |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5507 001 | Paper Size | Switches the control call on/off for the paper supply. DFU [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: No alarm. 1: Sets the alarm to sound for the specified number transfer sheets for each paper size. |
| 5507 004 | MaintenanceKit | When switched on this function informs the @Remote supply center that the maintenance kit requires servicing. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: OFF 1: ON |
| 5507 009 | Cartridge | When switched on this function informs the @Remote supply center that the toner cartridge is almost empty (near-end). 0: OFF 1: ON |
| 5507 080 | Toner Call Timing | Selects the timing of the toner supply call for @Remote. 0: At Replacement 1: At near end |
| 5507 128 | Interval: Others | |
| 5507 133 | Interval: A4 | |
| 5507 134 | Interval: A5 | The "Paper Supply Call Level: nn" SPs specify |
| 5507 142 | Interval: B5 | the paper control call interval for the referenced paper sizes. DFU |
| 5507 164 | Interval: LG | [00250 to 10000/1000/1] |
| 5507 166 | Interval: LT | |
| 5507 172 | Interval: HLT | |

| | SC/Alarm Setting | SC/Alarm call setting |
|----------|--|---|
| 5515 | With @Remote in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an SC call whan SC error occurs. If this SP is switched off, the SC call is not issued whan SC error occurs. | |
| 5515 001 | SC Call | [0 or 1 / 1 / 1] 0: OFF 1: ON |
| 5515 002 | Service Parts Near End Call | [0 or 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF |
| 5515 003 | Service Parts End Call | 1: ON |
| 5515 004 | User Call | |
| 5515 006 | Communication Test Call | [0 or 1 / 1 / 1] 0: OFF |
| 5515 007 | Machine Information | 1: ON |
| 5515 008 | Alarm Notice | [0 or 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF 1: ON |
| 5515 009 | Non Genuine Toner | |
| 5515 010 | Supply Automatic Ordering Call | [0 or 1 / 1 / 1] 0: OFF |
| 5515 011 | Supply Management Report Call | 1: ON |
| 5515 012 | Jam/Door Open Call | |

| 5733 | MICR Setting | |
|----------|------------------|---|
| 5733 001 | Model Switching | Switches the MICR model 0: RICOH Standard Model 1: Secure PCL MICR Model 2: IPDS MICR |
| 5733 002 | Print Availabili | Selects Not printing or printing with the MICR toner 0: Do not print 1: Print |

| | Memory Clear | Memory Clearance |
|----------|---|--|
| 5801 | Resets NVRAM data to the default settings. Before executing any of these SP codes, print an SMC Report. Press [EXECUTE] to execute the memory clearance. | |
| 5801 001 | All Clear | Initializes items 2 to 15 below. |
| 5801 002 | Plotter Engine | Initializes all registration settings for the engine and process settings. |
| 5801 003 | SCS | Initializes default system settings, SCS (System Control Service) settings, operation display coordinates, and ROM update information. |
| 5801 004 | IMH Memory Clr | Initializes the image file system. (IMH: Image Memory Handler) |
| 5801 005 | MCS | Initializes the automatic delete time setting for stored documents. (MCS: Memory Control Service) |
| 5801 008 | Printer | Initializes the printer defaults, programs registered, the printer SP bit switches, and the printer CSS counter. |

| 5801 010 | GWWS/ NFA | Deletes the Netfile (NFA) management files and thumbnails, and initializes the Job login ID. Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 5801 011 | NCS | Initializes the system defaults and interface settings (IP addresses also), the SmartNetMonitor for Admin settings, Web Image Monitor settings, and the TELNET settings. (NCS: Network Control Service) |
| 5801 014 | Clear DCS Setting | Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings. |
| 5801 015 | Clr UCS Setting | Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings. |
| 5801 016 | MIRS Setting | Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings. |
| 5801 017 | ccs | Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings. |
| 5801 018 | SRM Memory Clr | Initializes information in non-volatile RAM. |
| 5801 019 | LCS | Initializes information in non-volatile RAM. |
| 5801 021 | ECS | Initializes the ECS settings. |

| 5802 | Free Run | Execution of a Free Run |
|----------|----------|--|
| 5802 001 | Free Run | The machine performs a free run. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] Press [#Enter] to start. Press [#Enter] to stop. ↓ Note • The machine will not stop immediately after the [#Enter] key is pressed. |

| | Input Check | |
|----------|--|---|
| 5803 | Displays signals received from sensors and switches. SP Modes other than those listed in this table, are not used in the machine. | |
| | Operation Panel | Component Name |
| 5803 001 | Cover Open | Cover sensors [0x00 to 0x11 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 002 | Main Motor: Lock | Main Motor lock [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 003 | Polygon: Lock | Polygon Motor lock [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 005 | Main FAN: Lock | Exhaust fan [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 006 | PSU FAN: Lock | PSU fan [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 008 | SCB: SET | SCB [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 009 | Fusing Temp: Error | Fusing Temperature error, Overheat [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 010 | Toner End Sensor | Toner end sensor [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 011 | Paper Overflow SN | Paper Overflow sensor [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 012 | Regist Sensor | Registration sensor [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 013 | Paper Exit Ent SN | Paper Exit Entrance sensor [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 015 | Duplex Relay SN | Duplex Relay sensor [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 016 | Paper Ext Inv SN | Paper Exit Inverter sensor [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |

| 5803 017 | Paper End Sensor | Paper end sensor, Standard Tray [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
|----------|-----------------------|---|
| 5803 018 | Paper Height SN | Paper Height sensor, Standard Tray [0x000 to 0x111 / 0x000 / 0x001] |
| 5803 019 | Paper Size Sensor | Paper size switch, Standard tray [0x000 to 0x111 / 0x000 / 0x001] |
| 5803 020 | Bypass Paper End | Paper End, By-pass Tray [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 021 | AIO FAN: Lock | AIO Fan lock [0x00 to 0x01 / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 5803 023 | Trans Thermistor | Transfer Thermistor [-20 to 70 / 0 / 1 / deg] |
| 5803 024 | Fusing Thermistor | Fusing Thermistor [0 to 260 / 0 / 1 / deg] |
| 5803 025 | Fusing Unit Set | Fusing Unit set [0x0000 to 0xFFC0 / 0x0000 / 0x0001] |
| 5803 026 | HVPS: Transfer: IFB | HVPS unit Transfer current feedback [-10 to 48 / 0 / 1 / uA] |
| 5803 027 | HVPS: Charge: VFB | HVPS Charging Voltage feedback [-2500 to 0 / 0 / 1 / V] |
| 5803 028 | HVPS: Develop: VFB | HVPS Developing Voltage feedback [-1000 to 0 / 0 / 1 / V] |
| 5803 029 | Voltage Frequency | Power source Voltage Frequency [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 041 | PFU1: Tray Set SN | Tray Set sensor, Standard tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 042 | PFU1: Paper End SN | Paper End sensor, Standard tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 043 | PFU1: T2 Trans SN | Transport sensor, Standard tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

| 5803 044 | PFU1: PaperSize SN | Paper Size switch, Standard Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
|----------|--------------------|---|
| 5803 045 | PFU1: T2 Rest SN | Paper Rest sensor, Standard tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 046 | PFU2: Tray Set SN | Tray Set sensor, 1st Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 047 | PFU2: Paper End SN | Paper End sensor, 1st Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 048 | PFU2: T3 Trans SN | Transport sensor, 1st Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 049 | PFU2: PaperSize SN | Paper Size switch, 1st Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 050 | PFU2: T3 Rest SN | Paper Rest sensor, 1st Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 051 | PFU3: Tray Set SN | Tray Set sensor, 2nd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 052 | PFU3: Paper End SN | Paper End sensor, 2nd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 053 | PFU3: T4 Trans SN | Transport sensor, 2nd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 054 | PFU3: PaperSize SN | Paper Size switch, 2nd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 055 | PFU3: T4 Rest SN | Paper Rest sensor, 2rd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 056 | PFU4: Tray Set SN | Tray Set sensor, 3rd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 057 | PFU4: Paper End SN | Paper End sensor, 3rd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5803 058 | PFU4: T5 Trans SN | Transport sensor, 3rd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

| 5803 059 | PFU4: PaperSize SN | Paper Size switch, 3rd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
|----------|--------------------|---|
| 5803 060 | PFU4: T5 Rest SN | Paper Rest sensor, 3rd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

| | Output check | |
|----------|--|--|
| 5804 | Turns on electrical components individually for test purposes. SP Modes other than those listed in this table, are not used in the machine. | |
| | Operation Panel | Component Name |
| 5804 001 | All OFF | All Off [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 002 | Main Motor: H | Main Motor High speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 003 | Main Motor: L | Main Motor Low speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 004 | Duplex Motor: H | Duplex Motor High speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 005 | Duplex Motor: L | Duplex Motor Low speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 006 | Paper Ext Motor: H | Paper Exit Motor High speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 007 | Paper Ext Motor: L | Paper Exit Motor Low speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 008 | PaperExt MT:Rev:H | Paper Exit Motor Reverse High speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 009 | PaperExt MT:Rev:L | Paper Exit Motor Reverse Low speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 010 | Polygon Motor: H | Polygon Motor High speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

System //aintenance Reference

| 5804 011 | Polygon Motor: L | Polygon Motor Low speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
|----------|------------------|---|
| 5804 012 | PSU FAN | PSU fan [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 013 | Main FAN: H | Exhaust fan High speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 014 | Relay CL | Relay Clutch [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 015 | Paper Feed CL | Paper Feed Clutch [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 016 | Bypass Feed CL | Bypass Feed Clutch [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 017 | Regist CL | Registration Clutch [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 018 | Duplex Junc SOL | Duplex Junction Solenoid [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 019 | LD1 | Force Test LD 1 [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 020 | LD2 | Force Test LD 2 [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 021 | LD1 and LD2 | Force Test LD 1 and LD 2 [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 022 | Fusing Unit Fuse | Fusing Unit Fuse blow [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 024 | HVPS: Charge | HVPS unit Charge [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 025 | HVPS: Develop | HVPS unit Development [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 026 | HVPS: Transfer+ | HVPS unit Transfer Plus [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

| 5804 027 | HVPS: Transfer- | HVPS unit Transfer Minus [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
|----------|--------------------|---|
| 5804 028 | RFID: ON/OFF | RFID unit On and Off [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 029 | RFID: Comm | RFID Communication [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 031 | Main FAN: L | Exhaust fan Low speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 032 | AIO FAN: H | AIO fan High speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 033 | AIO FAN: L | AIO fan Low speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 034 | Main Motor: Rev: H | Main Motor Reverse High speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 035 | Main Motor: Rev: L | Main Motor Reverse Low speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 041 | PFU : All OFF | Paper Tray All Off [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 042 | PFU1: Motor: H | Paper Tray Motor-Standard Paper Tray High Speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 043 | PFU1: Motor: L | Paper Tray Motor-Standard Paper Tray Low Speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 044 | PFU1: PaperFeed CL | Paper Feed Clutch, Standard Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 045 | PFU2: Motor: H | Paper Tray Motor-1st Opt. Paper Tray High Speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

System Maintenance Reference

| 5804 046 | PFU2: Motor: L | Paper Tray Motor-1st Opt. Paper Tray Low Speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
|----------|--------------------|---|
| 5804 047 | PFU2: PaperFeed CL | Paper Feed Clutch-1st Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 048 | PFU3: Motor: H | Paper Tray Motor-2nd Opt. Paper Tray High Speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 049 | PFU3: Motor: L | Paper Tray Motor-2nd Opt. Paper Tray Low Speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 050 | PFU3: PaperFeed CL | Paper Feed Clutch-2nd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 051 | PFU4: Motor: H | Paper Tray Motor-3rd Opt. Paper Tray High Speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 052 | PFU4: Motor: L | Paper Tray Motor-3rd Opt. Paper Tray Low Speed [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |
| 5804 053 | PFU4: PaperFeed CL | Paper Feed Clutch-3rd Opt. Paper Tray [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

| 5807 | Destin./Model | |
|----------|------------------|---|
| 5807 001 | Destination Code | Sets the destination code. [1 to 7 / 2 / 1] 1: DOM (Japan) 2: NA (North America) 3: EU (Europe) 4: China 5: Asia 6: Taipei 7: Korea |

| 5807 002 | Type Code | Sets the machine type a / b. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Type a 1: Type b |
|----------|------------|--|
| 5807 003 | Model Code | Sets the model (Basic) code. [0 to 2 / 0 / 1] 0: Basic model 1: 1bin Model 2: Finisher Model |

| 5810 | Fusing SC Clear | Fusing SC error Clearance |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 5810 001 | Fusing SC Clear | Resets an SC code for a fusing unit error. After using this SP mode, turn the main switch off and on. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] |

| 5811 | Machine Serial | |
|----------|----------------|--|
| 5811 002 | Display | Displays a machine serial. [0 to 255 / 11 / 1] |
| 5811 004 | Set: BICU DFU | Used to input the machine serial number. This is normally done at the factory. [0 to 255 / 11 / 1] |

System //aintenance Reference

| | Service TEL | Support telephone number |
|----------|---|---|
| 5812 | Use these SP modes to input service and support telephone numbers. Enter the number and press [OK]. Press the [Clear] key to delete the telephone number. | |
| 5812 001 | Telephone | Use this to input the telephone number of the CE printed on the SP print mode printout. |
| 5812 002 | Facsimile | Use this to input the fax number of the CE printed on the SP print mode printout. |

| 5816 | NRS Function | |
|----------|---------------|--|
| 5816 001 | I/F Setting | Selects the remote service setting. [0 or 2 / 2 / 1] 0: OFF (Remote service off) 2: Network (@Remote remote service on) |
| 5816 002 | CE Call | Performs the CE Call at the start or end of the service. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Start of the service 1: End of the service ↓ Note • This SP is activated only when SP 5816-001 is set to "2". |
| 5816 003 | Function Flag | Enables or disables the remote service function. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled |
| 5816 007 | SSL Disable | Uses or does not use the RCG certification by SSL when calling the RCG. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Uses the RCG certification 1: Does no use the RCG certification |

| 5816 008 | RCG Connect T/O | Specifies the connect timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 90 / 30 / 1 second] |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5816 009 | RCG Write Timeout | Specifies the write timeout interval when calling the RCG. [0 to 100 / 60 / 1 second] |
| 5816 010 | RCG Read Timeout | Specifies the read timeout interval when calling the RCG. [0 to 100 / 60 / 1 second] |
| 5816 011 | Port 80 | Enables/disables access via port 80 to the SOAP method. [0 or 1 / 0 / –] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled |
| 5816 013 | RFU Timing | Selects the RFU (Remote Frimware Update) timing. [0 or 1 / 1 / -] 0: RFU is executed whenever update request is received. 1: RFU is executed only when the machine is in the sleep mode. |
| 5816 021 | Function Flag | This SP displays the embedded RCG installation end flag. [0 or 1 / 1 / –] 0: Installation not completed 1: Installation completed |
| 5816 022 | Install Status | This SP displays the external RCG installation status. [0 to 2 / 0 / –] 0: External RCG not registered 1: External RCG registered 2: Device registered |

| 5816 023 | Connect Mode (N/M) | This SP displays and selects the embedded RCG connection method. [0 or 1 / 1 / –] 0: Internet connection 1: Dial-up connection | | |
|----------|-----------------------------|--|--|--|
| 5816 061 | NotiTime ExpTime DFU | Proximity of the expiration of the certification. | | |
| 5816 062 | HTTP Proxy use | This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1] 0: HTTP Proxy not used 1: HTTP Proxy used | | |
| 5816 063 | HTTP Proxy Host | This SP sets the address of the proxy server used for communication between embedded RCG-N and the gateway. Use this SP to set up or display the customer's proxy server address. The address is necessary to set up embedded RCG-N. Note The address display is limited to 128 characters. Characters beyond the 128 character are ignored. This address is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. | | |
| 5816 064 | HTTP Proxy Port | This SP sets the port number of the proxy server used for communication between embedded RCG-N and the gateway. This setting is necessary to set up embedded RCG-N. Note • This port number is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. | | |

| 5816 065 | HTTP Prox AutUsr | | This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification user name. Note The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. |
|----------|------------------|---|--|
| 5816 066 | HTTF | P Prox AutPass | This SP sets the HTTP proxy certification password. Note The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report. |
| | Cer L | Jpdt Cond | Displays the status of the certification update. |
| | 0 | The certification use | d by embedded RCG is set correctly. |
| | 1 | | uest (setAuthKey) for update has been received nd certification is presently being updated. |
| | 2 | The certification upd of the successful up | ate is completed and the GW URL is being notified date. |
| 5816 067 | 3 | The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update. | |
| | 4 | The period of the certification has expired and new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL. | |
| | 11 | | certification has been issued and a rescue s in progress for the rescue GW connection. |
| | 12 | The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request. | |

| 13 The notification of the request for certification update has completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL. 14 The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored. 15 The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event. 16 The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event. 17 The certification update request has been received from the GW URL the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescice certification is being recorded. 18 The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW UR is being notified of the failure of the certification update. 18 Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the | | 1 | | |
|--|--|--|--|---|
| 14 rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored. 15 The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified the successful completion of this event. 16 The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event. 17 The certification update request has been received from the GW URL the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescicertification is being recorded. 18 The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW UR is being notified of the failure of the certification update. | | 13 successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification updat | | e system is waiting for the certification update |
| 15 the successful completion of this event. 16 The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event. 17 The certification update request has been received from the GW URL the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescicertification is being recorded. 18 The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW UR is being notified of the failure of the certification update. Displays a number code that describes the | 14rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored.15The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being the successful completion of this event.16The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is notified of the failure of this event.17The certification update request has been received from the the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it completed, but an certification error has been received, and | | | · |
| 16 notified of the failure of this event. 17 The certification update request has been received from the GW URL the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescicertification is being recorded. 18 The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update. Displays a number code that describes the | | | | • |
| 17 the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but an certification error has been received, and the rescice certification is being recorded. 18 The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update. 18 Displays a number code that describes the | | | - | • |
| 18 is being notified of the failure of the certification update. Displays a number code that describes the | | | tified of the results of the update after it was ertification error has been received, and the rescue | |
| | | 18 | The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update. | |
| certification. | | Cer A | bnml Cause | reason for the request for update of the |
| 0 Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress. | | 0 Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress. | | request for certification update in progress. |
| 1 Request for certification update in progress. The current certification has expired. | | | - | tion update in progress. The current certification |
| 5816 068 2 An SSL error notification has been issued. Issued after the certification has been issued. 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 1 1 1 1 2 1 1 2 1 1 3 1 1 4 1 1 4 1 1 4 1 1 5 1 1 5 1 1 5 1 1 4 1 1 5 1 1 5 1 1 5 1 1 5 1 1 5 1 1 6 1 1 6 1 1 6 1 1 6 1 1 6 1 1 7 1 | 5816 068 | 2 | | ation has been issued. Issued after the certification |
| 3 Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification. | | 3 | | |
| 4 Notification of a common certification without ID2. | | 4 | Notification of a common certification without ID2. | |
| 5 Notification that no certification was issued. | | 5 | Notification that no c | ertification was issued. |
| 6 Notification that GW URL does not exist. | | 6 | Notification that GW | URL does not exist. |
| 5816 069 Cer Updt ReqID The ID of the request for certification. | 5816 069 | Cer L | Ipdt ReqID | The ID of the request for certification. |
| 5816 083Firm UpdatingDisplays the status of the firmware update. | 5816 083 | Firm Updating Displays the status of the firmware upd | | Displays the status of the firmware update. |

| 5816 085 | Firm UpUsr Conf | This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL. |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5816 086 | Firmware Size | Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution. |
| 5816 087 | CERT: MacroVsn | Displays the macro version of the @Remote certification. |
| 5816 088 | CERT: PAC Vsn | Displays the PAC version of the @Remote certification. |
| 5816 089 | CERT: ID2 Code | Displays ID2 for the @Remote certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asteriskes (***) indicate that no @Remote certification exists. |
| 5816 090 | CERT: Subject | Displays the common name of the @Remote certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks (***) indicate that no DESS exists. |
| 5816 091 | CERT: SeriNum | Displays serial number for the @Remote certification. Asterisks (***) indicate that no DESS exists. |
| 5816 092 | CERT: Issuer | Displays the common name of the issuer of the @Remote certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asteriskes (***) indicate that no DESS exists. |
| 5816 093 | CERT: St ExpTime | Displays the start time of the period for which the current @Remote certification is enabled. |
| 5816 094 | CERT: End ExpTime | Displays the end time of the period for which the current @Remote certification is enabled. |

| 5816 200 | Polling Man Exc | Executes manual polling. Cumin periodically polls the @Remote Gateway by HTTPS. This is called "center polling". Use this SP at any time to poll the @Remote supply center. |
|----------|------------------|---|
| 5816 201 | Instl: Condition | Displays a number that indicates the status of the @Remote service device. 0: Neither the registered device by the embedded RCG nor embedded RCG device is set. 1: The embedded RCG device is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status the external RCG unit cannot answer a polling request. 2: The embedded RCG device is set. In this status the external RCG unit cannot answer a polling request. 3: The registered device by the embedded RCG is being set. In this status the external RCG unit cannot answer a polling request. 4: The registered module by the embedded RCG has not started. |
| 5816 202 | Instl: ID # | Allows entry of the number of the request needed for the embedded RCG device. |
| 5816 203 | Instl: Reference | Executes the inquiry request to the @Remote GateWay URL. |
| 5816 204 | Instl: Ref Rslt | Displays a number that indicates the result of the inquiry executed with SP5816 203. 0: Succeeded 1: Inquiry number error 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error 8: Other error 9: Inquiry executing |

| 5816 205 | Instl: Ref Section | device from request. Dis | e result of the notification sent to the a the GW URL in answer to the inquiry splayed only when the result is at the GW URL. |
|----------|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| 5816 206 | Instl: Rgstltn | Executes E | mbedded RCG Registration. |
| 5816 207 | Instl: Rgstltn Rst | result. 0: Succeed 2: Registrat 3: Proxy err 4: Proxy err 5: Proxy err 6: Commun 7: Certificat 8: Other err | tion in progress ror (proxy enabled) ror (proxy disabled) ror (Illegal user name or password) nication error tion update error |
| 5816 208 | Instl: ErrorCode | that was iss | number that describes the error code sued when either SP5816-204 or 7 was executed. |
| | Cause | Code | Meaning |
| | | -11001 | Chat parameter error |
| | Illegal Modem Parameter | -11002 | Chat execution error |
| | | -11003 | Unexpected error |
| | | -12002 | Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status. |
| | Operation Error, Incorrect Setting | -12003 | Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration. |
| | | -12004 | Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2. |

| | | -12005 | @Remote communication is prohibited. The device has an Embedded RC gate-related problem. |
|----------|--|-----------------------|---|
| | Confirmation error, Incorrect certification | -12006 | A confirmation request was made after the confirmation had been already completed. |
| | | -12007 | The request number used at registration was different from the one used at confirmation. |
| | | -12008 | Update certification failed because mainframe was in use. |
| | | -2385 | Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number. |
| | | -2387 | Not supported at the Service Center |
| | | -2389 | Database out of service |
| | | -2390 | Program out of service |
| | Error Causad by | -2391 | Two registrations for same device |
| | Error Caused by Response from GW URL | -2392 | Parameter error |
| | | -2393 | External RCG not managed |
| | | -2394 | Device not managed |
| | | -2395 | Box ID for External RCG is illegal |
| | | -2396 | Device ID for External RCG is illegal |
| | | -2397 | Incorrect ID2 format |
| | | -2398 | Incorrect request number format |
| 5816 209 | Instl Clear | Releases th setup. | ne machine from its embedded RCG |
| 5816 250 | Print Com Log | Prints the c | ommunication log. |

| 5821 | NRS Address | |
|----------|----------------|---|
| 5821 002 | RCG IP Address | Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [00000000h to FFFFFFFh / 0000000h / -] |

| 5824 | NVRAM Upload | |
|----------|--------------|--|
| 5824 001 | NVRAM Upload | Uploads the UP and SP mode data (except for counters and the serial number) from NVRAM on the control board to a flash memory card. While using this SP mode, always keep the front cover open. This prevents a software module accessing the NVRAM during the upload. |

| 5825 | NVRAM Download | |
|----------|----------------|---|
| 5825 001 | NVRAM Download | Downloads the content of a flash memory card to the NVRAM on the control board. |

| | Network Setting | |
|----------|---|--|
| 5828 | This machine supports both Internet Protocols IPv4 and IPv6. IPv6 is the next generation protocol designed by the IETF to replace IPV4. IPv6 adds many improvements such as routing and network auto-configuration. | |
| 5828 050 | 1284 Compatiblit | Enables and disables bi-directional communication on the parallel connection between the machine and a computer. [0 to 1 / 1 / -] 0:Off 1: On |

| 5828 052 | ECP(Centro) | Disables and enables the ECP feature (1284 Mode) for data transfer. [0 to 1 / 1 / -] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled |
|----------|----------------------|---|
| 5828 065 | Job Spooling | Switches job spooling on and off. [0 to 1 / 1 / -] 0: No spooling 1: Spooling enabled |
| 5828 066 | Job Spooling Clear | This SP determines whether the job interrupted at power off is resumed at the next power on. This SP operates only when SP5828 065 is set to 1. [0 to 1 / 1 / -] 1: OFF (Resumes printing spooled jog.) 0: ON (Clears spooled job.) |
| 5828 069 | JobSpooling(Protocl) | This SP determines whether job spooling is enabled or disabled for each protocol. This is an 8-bit setting. Bit 0: LPR Bit 1: FTP (Not Used) Bit 2: IPP Bit 3: SMB Bit 4: BMLinks (Japan Only) Bit 5: DIPRINT Bit 6: Reserved (Not Used) Bit 7: Reserved (Not Used) Default: 0111111b (7f H) |
| 5828 090 | TELNET(0:OFF 1:0 | Disables or enables Telnet operation. If this SP is disabled, the Telnet port is closed. [0 to 1 / 1 / -] 0: OFF 1: ON |

| 5828 091 | Web(0:OFF 1:ON) | Disables or enables the Web operation. [0to1 / 1 / -] 0: OFF 1: ON |
|----------|------------------------|--|
| 5828 145 | Active IPv6 Link Local | This is the IPv6 local address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11) in the format: "Link-Local address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses " below this table. |
| 5828 147 | Active IPv6 Stat 1 | These SPs are the IPv6 stateless addresses (1 |
| 5828 149 | Active IPv6 Stat 2 | to 5) referenced on the Ethernet or wireless |
| 5828 151 | Active IPv6 Stat 3 | LAN (802.11) in the format: "Stateless Address" + "Prefix Length" |
| 5828 153 | Active IPv6 Stat 4 | The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits |
| 5828 155 | Active IPv6 Stat 5 | configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. |
| 5828 156 | IPv6 Manual Address | This SP is the IPv6 manually set address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11) in the format: "Manual Set Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses" below this table. |
| 5828 158 | IPv6 Gateway Address | This SP is the IPv6 gateway address referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11). The IPv6 address consists of a total 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each. These notations can be abbreviated. See "Note: IPV6 Addresses " below this table. |

| 5828 161 | IPv6 Stateless Auto | Enables or disables the IPv6 Stateless Auto setting on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11). [0 to1 / 1 / -] 0: Off 1: On |
|----------|---------------------|---|
|----------|---------------------|---|

Vote Note

IPV6 Addresses

- Ethernet and the Wireless LAN (802.11) reference the IPV6 "Link-Local address + Prefix Length". The IPV6 address consists of 128 bits divided into 8 blocks of 16 bits:
- aaaa:bbbb:cccc:dddd:eeee:ffff:gggg:hhhh:
- The prefix length is inserted at the 17th byte (Prefix Range: 0x0to0x80). The initial setting is 0x40(64).
- For example, the data:
- 2001123456789012abcdef012345678940h
- is expressed:
- 2001:1234:5678:9012:abcd:ef01:2345:6789: prefixlen 64
- However, the actual IPV6 address display is abbreviated according to the following rules.

Rules for Abbreviating IPV6 Addresses

1. The IPV6 address is expressed in hexadecimal delimited by colons (:) with the following characters:

0123456789abcdefABCDEF

- 2. A colon is inserted as a delimiter every 4th hexadecimal character. fe80:0000:0000:0207:40ff:0000:340e
- The notations can be abbreviated by eliminating zeros where the MSB and digits following the MSB are zero. The example in "2" above, then, becomes: fe80:0:0:0207:40ff:0:340e
- 4. Sections where only zeros exist can be abbreviated with double colons (::). This abbreviation can be done also where succeeding sections contain only zeros (but this can be done only at one point in the address). The example in "2" and "3" above then becomes: fe80::207:40ff:0:340e (only the first null sets zero digits are abbreviated as "::")

-or-

fe80:0:0:0:207:40ff::340e (only the last null set before "340e" is abbreviated as "::"

| 5828 236 | Web Item visible | Displays or does not display the Web system items. [0x0000 to 0xFFFF / 0xFFFF / -] 0: Not displayed 1: Displayed bit0: Net RICOH bit1: Consumable Supplier bit2-15: Reserved (all) |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5828 237 | Web shop Link | Displays or does not display the link to Net RICOH on the top page and link page of the web system. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Not display 1: Display |
| 5828 238 | Web supplies Link | Displays or does not display the link to Consumable Supplier on the top page and link page of the web system. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Not display 1:Display |
| 5828 239 | Web Link1 Name | This SP confirms or changes the URL1 name on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL name are 31 characters. |
| 5828 240 | Web Link1 URL | This SP confirms or changes the link to URL1 on the link page of the web system. The maximum characters for the URL are 127 characters. |
| 5828 241 | Web Link1 visible | Displays or does not display the link to URL1 on the top page of the web system. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Not display 1: Display |

| 5828 242 | Web Link2 Name | Same as "-239" (URL2) |
|----------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 5828 243 | Web Link2 URL | Same as "-240" |
| 5828 244 | Web Link2 visible | Same as "-241" |

| 5832 | HDD | |
|----------|------------------|--|
| 5832 001 | Formatting (ALL) | Initializes the hard disk. Use this only if there is a hard disk error. |

| 5837 | Program checksum | |
|----------|------------------|--|
| 5837 001 | Program checksum | Displays the checksum for the engine firmware. |

| 5840 | IEEE 802.11 | |
|----------|-------------|---|
| 5840 006 | Channel max | Sets the maximum range of the bandwidth for the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries. [1 to 14 / 11 (NA), 13 (EU), 14 (JPN) / 1] JPN: 1 to 14 NA: 1 to 11 EU: 1 to 13 |
| 5840 007 | Channel MIN | Sets the minimum range of the bandwidth for operation of the wireless LAN. This bandwidth setting varies for different countries. [1 to 14 / 1 / 1] JPN: 1 to 14 NA: 1 to 11 EU: 1 to 13 |

| 5840 008 | Transmission Speed | [0x00 to 0xFF / 0xFF to Auto / -] 0x11 - 55M Fix 0x10 - 48M Fix 0x0F - 36M Fix 0x0E - 18M Fix 0x0D - 12M Fix 0x0B - 9M Fix 0x0A - 6M Fix 0x07 - 11M Fix |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| | | 0x05 - 5.5M Fix 0x08 - 1M Fix 0x13 - 0xFE (reserved) 0x12 - 72M (reserved) 0x09 - 22M (reserved) |
| 5840 011 | WEP Key Select | Selects the WEP key. Bit 1 and 0 00: Key1 01: Key2 (Reserved) 10: Key3 (Reserved) 11: Key4 (Reserved) This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |
| 5840 042 | Fragment Thresh | Adjusts the fragment threshold for the IEEE802.11 card. [256 to 2346 / 2346 / 1] This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |
| 5840 043 | 11g CTS to Self | Determines whether the CTS self function is turned on or off. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: Off 1: On This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |

| 5840 044 | 11g Slot Time | Selects the slot time for IEEE802.11. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: 20 μ seconds 1: 9 μ seconds This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |
|----------|---------------|---|
| 5840 045 | WPA Debug Lvl | Selects the debug level for WPA authentication application. [1 to 3 / 3 / 1] 1: Info 2: warning 3: error This SP is displayed only when the IEEE802.11 card is installed. |

| | GWWS Analysis (DFU) | | |
|----------|---|----------------------------|---|
| | This is a debugging tool. It sets the debugging output mode of each Net File process. Bit SW 0011 1111 | | |
| | Bit | Groups | |
| | 0 | System & other | groups (LSB) |
| 5842 | 1 | Capture related | |
| | 2 | Certification rel | ated |
| | 3 | Address book related | |
| | 4 | Machine management related | |
| | 5 | Output related | (printing, delivery) |
| | 6 | Repository related | |
| 5842 001 | Setting 1 | | Default: 00000000 – do not change Netfiles: Jobs to be printed from the document server using a PC and the DeskTopBinder software |

| 5842 002 | Setting 2 | Adjusts the debug program mode setting. Bit7: 5682 mmseg-log setting 0: Date/Hour/Minute/Second 1: Minute/Second/Msec. 0 to 6: Not used |
|----------|-----------|---|
|----------|-----------|---|

| 5844 | USB | |
|----------|-----------------------|--|
| 5844 001 | Transfer Rate | Sets the speed for USB data transmission. [0x01 to 0x04 / 0x04 / -] 0x01: Full Speed 0x04: Auto Change |
| 5844 002 | Vendor ID | DFU |
| 5844 003 | Product ID | DFU |
| 5844 004 | Device Release Number | DFU |
| 5844 005 | Fixed USB Port | Fixes a PnP name of USB [0 to 2 / 0 / 1] 0:OFF 1:LevI1 2:LeveI2 |
| 5844 006 | PnP Model Name | Sets the PnP name when Sp5844-005 is set to On (1 or 2). |
| 5844 007 | PnP Serial Number | Sets the USB serial number when SP5844-005 is set to On (1 or 2). Default: a number generated from model name |
| 5844 100 | Notify Unsupport | Enable/disenables the unsupported device notification [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 1: enable 2: disenable |

| 5845 | Delivery Srv Provides items for delivery server settings. | |
|----------|--|---|
| 5645 | | |
| 5845 003 | Retry Interval | Determines the time interval between retries before the machine returns to standby after an error occurs during an image transfer with the delivery scanner or SMTP server. [60 to 900 / 300 / 1 second] |
| 5845 004 | No. of Retries | Determines the number of retries before the machine returns to standby after an error occurs during an image transfer with the delivery or SMTP server. [0 to 99 / 3 / 1] |
| 5845 022 | InstantTrans Off | Enables or disables the prevention function for the continuous data sending error. [0 to 1 / 1 / -] 0: Disable 1: Enable |

| 5846 | UCS Setting | |
|----------|------------------|---|
| 5846 010 | LDAP Search TOut | Sets the length of the time-out for the search of the LDAP server. [1 to 255 / 60 /1] |

| | | This SP must be executed immediately after |
|-----------|-----------------|--|
| | | installation of an HDD unit in a basic machine |
| | | that previously had no HDD. The first time the |
| | | machine is powered on with the new HDD |
| | | installed, the system automatically takes the |
| | | address book from the NVRAM and writes it |
| | | onto the new HDD. However, the new address |
| | | book on the HDD can be accessed only by the |
| | | system administrator at this stage. Executing |
| | | this SP by the service technician immediately |
| | | after power on grants full address book access |
| 5846 041 | AddrB Acl Info | to all users. |
| 5040 04 1 | | Procedure |
| | | 1. Turn the machine off. |
| | | 2. Install the new HDD. |
| | | 3. Turn the machine on. |
| | | 4. The address book and its initial data are |
| | | created on the HDD automatically. |
| | | However, at this point the address book can |
| | | be accessed by only the system |
| | | administrator or key operator. |
| | | 5. Enter the SP mode and do SP5846 041. |
| | | After this SP executes successfully, any |
| | | user can access the address book. |
| | | Displays the slot number where an address |
| | AddrB Media | book data is in. |
| | | [0 to 30 / - / 1] |
| | | 0: Unconfirmed |
| 5846 043 | | 1: SD Slot 1 |
| | | 2: SD Slot 2 |
| | | 4: USB Flash ROM |
| | | 20: HDD |
| | | 30: Nothing |
| | | Clears all of the address information from the |
| 1 1 | | |
| 5846 047 | Ini Local AddrB | local address book of a machine managed with |

| 5846 049 | Ini LDAP AddrB | Press [EXECUTE] to delete all items (this does not include user codes) in the LDAP address book that is controlled by UCS. |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5846 050 | Ini All AddrB | Clears everything (including users codes) in the directory information managed by UCS. However, the accounts and passwords of the system administrators are not deleted. |
| 5846 051 | Bkup All AddrB | Copies all directory information to the SD card. Do this SP before replacing the controller board or HDD. The operation may not succeed if the controller board or HDD is damaged. |
| 5846 052 | Restr All AddrB | Copies back all directory information from the SD card to the flash ROM or HDD. Upload the address book from the old flash ROM or HDD with SP5846-51 before removing it. Do SP5846-52 after installing the new HDD. |
| 5846 053 | Clear Backup Info | Deletes the address book uploaded from the SD card in the slot 2. Deletes only the files uploaded for that machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected. Note: After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, turn the power off. Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing. |

| | | This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book. | | |
|----------|---------------|--|---|--|
| | | Bit | Meaning | |
| | | 0 | Checks both upper/lower case characters | |
| | | 1 | | |
| 5846 060 | Search option | 2 | Japan Only | |
| | | 3 | | |
| | | 4 | Not Used | |
| | | 5 | Not Used | |
| | | 6 | Not Used | |
| | | 7 | Not Used | |
| 5846 062 | Compl Opt 1 | Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to upper case and sets the length of the password. [0 to 32 / 0 / 1] ✓ Note This SP does not normally require adjustment. This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. | | |

| 5846 063 | Compl Opt 2 | Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to lower case and defines the length of the password. [0 to 32 / 0 / 1step] Vote • This SP does not normally require adjustment. • This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. |
|----------|-------------|--|
| 5846 064 | Compl Opt 3 | Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to numbers and defines the length of the password. [0 to 32 / 0 / 1step] Note This SP does not normally require adjustment. This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. |

| 5846 065 | Compl Opt 4 | Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to symbols and defines the length of the password. [0 to 32 / 0 / 1step] ✓ Note This SP does not normally require adjustment. This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book. |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 5846 094 | Encryption Stat | Shows the status of the encryption function of the address book on the LDAP server. [0 to 255 / - / 1] No default |

| 5848 | Web Service | | |
|----------|---------------------------|--|--|
| 5848 004 | ac:UD | Switches access control on and off. | |
| 5848 009 | ac:Job Ctrl | 0000: OFF | |
| 5848 011 | ac:Dev Mng | 0001: ON | |
| 5848 022 | ac:Uadmin | | |
| 5848 210 | LogType:Job1 DFU | | |
| 5848 211 | LogType:Job2 DFU | | |
| 5848 212 | LogType:Access DFU | V Note | |
| 5848 213 | PrimarySrv DFU | These SP codes are for display only; | |
| 5848 214 | Secondary Srv DFU | they cannot be changed. | |
| 5848 215 | StartTime DFU | | |
| 5848 216 | IntervalTime DFU | | |

| | | Note These SP codes are for display only; they cannot be changed. |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 5848 217 | Timing DFU | [0 to 2 / 0 / 1] |
| | | 0: Transmission off |
| | | 1: Transmission 1 by 1 |
| | | 2: Periodic transmission |

| 5940 | Installation Date | |
|----------|--|---|
| 5849 | Displays or prints the installation date of the machine. | |
| 5849 001 | Display | Displays the installation date of the machine. |
| 5849 002 | Print | Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter. [0 to 1 / 1 / -] 0: OFF (No Print) 1: ON (Print) |
| 5849 003 | Total Counter | Displays the total counter of the machine installation's day. |

| | Bluetooth (The Printer model has no Bluetooth options) |
|--------------------|---|
| 5851* ¹ | Sets the Bluetooth security mode. 0: Public 1: Private |

| 5856 | Remote ROM Update | |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5856 002 | Local Port | When set to "enable" allows reception of firmware data via the local port (IEEE 1284) during a remote ROM update. 0: Disallow 1: Allow This setting is reset to "disable" after the machine is cycled off and on. |

| 5857 | Debug Log Save | |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 5857 001 | ON/OFF | Switches on the debug log feature. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: OFF 1: ON |
| 5857 002 | Target 2:HDD 3:SD | Selects the destination where the debugging information generated by the event selected by SP5858 will be stored if an error is generated [2 to 3 / 2 / 1] 2: HDD 3: SD Card |
| 5857 005 | Save to HDD | Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the hard disk. |
| 5857 006 | Save to SD Card | Specifies the decimal key number of the log to be written to the SD Card. |
| 5857 009 | HDD to SD Latest | Takes the most recent 4 MB of the log written to the hard disk and copies them to the SD Card. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card. |

| 5857 010 | HDD to SD Any | Takes the log of the specified key from the log on the hard disk and copies it to the SD Card. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD Card. Up to 4 MB can be copied to an SD Card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to each SD Card. This SP does not execute if there is no log on the HDD with no key specified. |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 5857 011 | Erase HDD Debug | Erases all debug logs on the HDD |
| 5857 012 | Erase SD Debug | Erases all debug logs on the SD Card. If the card contains only debugging files generated by an event specified by SP5858, the files are erased when SP5857 010 or 011 is executed. To enable this SP, the machine must be cycled off and on. |
| 5857 013 | Dsply-SD Space | Displays the amount of space available on the SD card. |
| 5857 014 | SD to SD Latest | Copies the last 4MB of the log (written directly to the card from shared memory) onto an SD card. |
| 5857 015 | SD to SD Any | This SP copies the log on an SD card (the file that contains the information written directly from shared memory) to a log specified by key number. |
| 5857 016 | Make HDD Debug | This SP creates a 32 MB file to store a log on the HDD. |
| 5857 017 | Make SD Debug | This SP creates a 4 MB file to store a log on an SD card. |

| | Debug Log Save: SC | |
|----------|---|--|
| 5858 | These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857-002. SP5858-003 stores one SC specified by number. | |
| 5858 001 | Engine SC | Stores SC codes generated by printer engine errors. (0: OFF 1: ON) |
| 5858 002 | Controller SC | Stores SC codes generated by GW controller errors. (0: OFF 1: ON) |
| 5858 003 | Any SC | [0 to 65535 / 0 / 1] |
| 5858 004 | Jam | Stores jam errors. (0: OFF 1: ON) |

| 5859 | Debug Log SaveKey | |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5859 001 | Key 1 | |
| 5859 002 | Key 2 | |
| 5859 003 | Key 3 | |
| 5859 004 | Key 4 | |
| 5859 005 | Key 5 | These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for |
| 5859 006 | Key 6 | functions that use common memory on the controller board. [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1] |
| 5859 007 | Key 7 | |
| 5859 008 | Key 8 | |
| 5859 009 | Key 9 | |
| 5859 010 | Key 10 | |

| 5860 | SMTP/POP3/IMAP4 | |
|----------|-----------------------|--|
| 5860 002 | SMTP Srvr Port No | Input the SMTP server port number. |
| 5860 003 | SMTP Authentication | SMTP authentication enable/disable [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Disable 1: Enable |
| 5860 006 | SMTP Auth. Encryp | Encryption mode for SMTP authentication enable/disable (Only valid if SP5-860-003 is set to "enable") [0 to 2 / 0 / 1] 0: Automatic 1: No encryption 2: Encrypt |
| 5860 007 | POP before SMTP | Enable/disable POP before SMTP. If the SMTP server does not have authentication, you can enable POP before SMTP, them POP authentication is available (SP 5860 013) [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: Disable 1: Enable |
| 5860 008 | POPtoSMTP Waiting | When using POP before SMTP, this SP mode determines the maximum wait time between POP authentication and connection with SMTP. Communication stops if this time is exceeded. [0 to 10000 / 300 / -] |
| 5860 009 | Mail Receive Protocol | Selects the protocol for the mail reception. [1 to 3 / 1 / 1] 1: POP3 2: IMAP4 3: SMTP |

| 5860 013 | POP3/IMAP4 Auth. | If POP before SMTP is enabled, then you can use this SP to enable or disable encryption mode for POP authentication [0 to 2 / 0 / 1] 0: Auto 1: Off 2: On |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5860 014 | POP3 Srvr Port No | Input the POP server port number. |
| 5860 015 | IMAP4 Srvr Port | Input the IMAP4 server port number. [1 to 65535 / 143 / 1] |
| 5860 016 | SMTP Rx Port No | Input the SMTP port for the mail reception. [1 to 65535 / 25 / 1] |
| 5860 017 | Mail Rx Interval | Specifies the interval for the mail reception. |
| 5860 019 | Mail Keep Setting | Selects the mail saving setting. [0 to 2 / 0 / 1] 0: Not saved in the mail server 1: All saved in the mail server 2: Only error mails saved in the mail server |
| 5860 020 | ParMail RecTOut | Sets the amount of time to wait before saving a mail that breaks up during reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not received during this prescribed time. [1 to 168 / 72 / 1 hour] |
| 5860 021 | MDN ResRFC2298 | Determines whether RFC2298 compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail. [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] 0: No 1: Yes |

| 5860 022 | SMTPAut FieldRep | If SMTP authentication is enabled, this SP mode determines which name is included in the e-mail header. [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Normal sender name 1: User name used by the authentication feature |
|----------|------------------------------|---|
| 5860 025 | SMTPAut DirectSet DFU | Select the authentication method for SMPT. Bit 0: LOGIN Bit 1: PLAIN Bit 2: CRAM_MD5 Bit 3: DIGEST_MD5 Bit 4 to Bit 7: Not Used Default: 0000000b Note This SP is activated only when SMTP authentication is enabled by UP mode. |
| 5860 026 | S/MIME Header | Selects the MIME header type of an E-mail sent by S/MIME. [0 to 2 / 0 / 1] 0: Microsoft Outlook Express standard 1: Internet Draft standard 2: RFC standard |

| 5866 | E-Mail Report | |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 5866 001 | Report Validity | Enables or disables the E-mail alert function. [0 or 1 / 0 / –] 0: Enabled 1: Disabled |
| 5866 005 | Add Date Field | Adds or does not add the date field to the header of the alert mail. [0 or $1 / 0 / -$] 0: Not added 1: Added |

| 5869 | RAM Disk Setting | |
|----------|------------------|--|
| 5869 001 | Mail Function | This SP enables and disables email sending and receiving. This setting determines the size of the RAM disk (MB) that the machine uses to manage email sending and receiving. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] O: Use. Allocates 46 MB for sending and 8 MB for receiving. 1: Do not use |

| | Common KeyInfo Writing | |
|----------|--|--|
| 5870 | Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for @Remote specifications. Note These SP settings are required to connect @Remote or must also be set after the board is replaced. Even if @Remote is not connected, these settings are used for Web validation, so at least SP5-870-003 must be enabled. | |
| | | |
| 5870 001 | Writing | Writes the authentication data (used for NRS) in the memory. |
| 5870 003 | Initialize | Initializes the authentication data in the memory. |

| | SDCardAppliMove | |
|--|-----------------|--|
| 5873 Allows you to move applications from one SD card another. For me please refer to the "SD Card Application Move" section. | | |
| 5873 001 | MoveExec | Executes the move from one SD card to another. |
| 5873 002 | UndoExec | This is an undo function. It cancels the previous execution. |

| 5878 | Option Setup | |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 5878 001 | DataOverwriteSec. | Press [EXECUTE] to initialize the Data Overwrite Security option for the printer. For more, see "DataOverwriteSecurity Unit" in the chapter "Installation". |
| 5878 002 | HDD Encryption | Press [EXECUTE] to initialize the HDD Encryption option for the printer. For more, see "HDD Encryption" in the chapter "Installation". |

| 5887 | SD GetCounter | |
|----------|---------------|---|
| 5887 001 | SD GetCounter | This SP outputs a text file (.txt) that lists the counts for the application SD card inserted into the SD service slot. Before executing this SP, you must first create a folder entitled "SD_COUNTER" in the root directory of the SD card. |

| 5888 | Person. InfoProt. | |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5888 001 | Person. InfoProt. | Selects the protection level for logs. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: No authentication, No protection for logs 1: No authentication, Protected logs (only an administrator can see the logs) |

| 5902 | SDK Apli Cnt Name |
|----------|--|
| 5893 | Displays the counter name of each SDK application. |
| 5893 001 | SDK-1 |
| 5893 002 | SDK-2 |
| 5893 003 | SDK-3 |
| 5893 004 | SDK-4 |
| 5893 005 | SDK-5 |
| 5893 006 | SDK-6 |

| | Test Print | |
|----------|--|--|
| 5902 | Prints the test pattern that you selected with SP5-902-003. Press [EXECUTE] to execute. | |
| 5902 001 | 1 Sheet Test | Prints one test pattern. |
| 5902 002 | Cont Test | Prints consecutive copies of the test pattern |
| 5902 003 | Test Pattern | Selects a printer test pattern. Use SP5-902 to print either one test pattern (SP5-902-001) or more than one pattern. (SP5-902-002). [0 to 30 / 0 / 1] |
| | Patterns: | |
| | 0: None | |
| | 1: Vertical Line (1dot) | |
| | 2: Vertical Line (2dot) | |
| | 3: Horizontal Line (1dot) | |
| | 4: Horizontal Line (2dot) | |
| | 5: Grid Vertical Line | |

| 6: Grid Horizontal Line |
|--|
| 7: Grid Pattern Small |
| 8: Grid Pattern Large |
| 9: Argyle Pattern Small |
| 10: Argyle Pattern Large |
| 11: Independent Pattern (1dot) |
| 12: Independent Pattern (2dot) |
| 13: Independent Pattern (4dot) |
| 14: Trimming Area |
| 15: Hound's Tooth Check (Vertical) |
| 16: Hound's Tooth Check (Horizontal) |
| 17: Band (Horizontal) |
| 18: Band (Vertical) |
| 19: Checker Flag Pattern |
| 20: Density Pattern |
| 21: Full Dot Pattern |
| 22: Full White Pattern |
| 23: Grayscale (Horizontal Margin) |
| 24: Grayscale White(Horizontal Margin) |
| 25: Grayscale (Vertical Margin) |
| 26: Grayscale White (Vertical Margin) |
| 27: Grayscale |
| 28: Grayscale White |
| 29: Grayscale (Cross Margin) |
| 30: Grayscale White (Cross Margin) |
| |

| 5907 | Plug & Play | |
|----------|-------------|--|
| 5907 001 | Plug & Play | Sets the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in NVRAM. If the NVRAM is defective or has been replaced, these names should be registered again. To set the plug and play model name, enter the model number, and then press [#]. |

| 5930 | Meter Click Charge | |
|----------|--|--|
| 5930 001 | Setting | Switches the meter-click charge mode on and off. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1] 0: No 1: Yes |
| | No: Meter charge This setting is for a replacing the AIO Alert messages ar or PM parts reach The PM counter refusing unit. Yes: Meter charge This setting is for a responsibility for s Alert messages ar the limits of their y Pressing the [Men | machines where the service technician has ervicing the machine. re not displayed when the AIO or PM parts reach rield. nu] button displays the meter charge count. ician must reset the PM counter after completing |

| 5930 002 | Life Disp:Maintenance Kit | Displays the maintenance kit near end notification [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] |
|----------|---------------------------|--|
| 5930 003 | Life Disp:AIO | Displays the AIO cartridge near end notification [0 to 1 / 1 / 1] |

| 5990 | SP Print Mode | |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 5990 001 | All | |
| 5990 002 | SP | |
| 5990 004 | Logging Data | |
| 5990 005 | Diagnostic Report | Prints the summary sheet for the item selected. |
| 5990 006 | Non-Default | Press [EXECUTE] to execute. |
| 5990 007 | NIB Summary | |
| 5990 024 | SDK/J Summary | |
| 5990 025 | SDK/J Appli. Info | |

| 5007 | PSC | |
|----------|---------------|-------------------------|
| 5997 | Sets the PSC. | |
| 5997 001 | COMMAND | [0 to 3 / 2 / 1] |
| 5997 002 | DOMAIN_IF | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 003 | RAPI | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 004 | PRINT | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 005 | ENGINE | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 006 | THREAD | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 007 | THREAD_OBJ | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 008 | STS_TREE | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 009 | TREE_INIT | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |

| 5997 010 | EVENT | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
|----------|--------|-------------------------|
| 5997 011 | SP | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 012 | OTHER | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |
| 5997 013 | MEMORY | [0 to 3 / 0 / 1] |

SP7-xxx: Data Log

| 7001 | Operation Time | |
|----------|----------------|--|
| 7001 001 | Operation Time | Displays the total number of engine rotation cycles made so far. [0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1] ✓ Note One cycle is calculated as 2.4 seconds of drum rotation. However, this counter also includes idle rotations. This counter is not reset at PM. |

| 7401 | Total SC Counter | |
|----------|------------------|--|
| 7401 001 | Total SC Counter | Displays the total number of service calls that have occurred. [0000 to 9999 / 0 / 1] |

| 7403 | SC History | |
|----------|------------|--|
| 7403 001 | Latest | |
| 7403 002 | Latest 1 | |
| 7403 003 | Latest 2 | |
| 7403 004 | Latest 3 | |
| 7403 005 | Latest 4 | Displays the most recent service calls |
| 7403 006 | Latest 5 | successive groups of 10. |
| 7403 007 | Latest 6 | |
| 7403 008 | Latest 7 | |
| 7403 009 | Latest 8 | |
| 7403 010 | Latest 9 | |

| 7404 | SC991 History | |
|----------|---------------|---|
| 7404 001 | Latest | |
| 7404 002 | Latest 1 | |
| 7404 003 | Latest 2 | |
| 7404 004 | Latest 3 | |
| 7404 005 | Latest 4 | Displays the most recent SC991 successive |
| 7404 006 | Latest 5 | groups of 10. |
| 7404 007 | Latest 6 | |
| 7404 008 | Latest 7 | |
| 7404 009 | Latest 8 | |
| 7404 010 | Latest 9 | |

| 7502 | Counter-Paper Jam | |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 7502 001 | Counter-Paper Jam | Displays the total number of jams. [0000 to 9999 / 0 / 1] |

| | Paper Jam Loc |
|-----------|--|
| 7504 | Displays the total number of jams by location. A "Paper Late" error occurs when the paper fails to activate the sensor at the precise time. A "Paper Lag" paper jam occurs when the paper remains at the sensor for longer than the prescribed time. [0000 to 9999 / 0 / 1] |
| Error No. | Error |
| 001 | At Power On |
| 003 | Tray 1: On |
| 004 | Tray 2: On |
| 005 | Tray 3: On |
| 006 | Tray 4: On |
| 007 | Tray 5: On |
| 008 | Bypass: On |
| 009 | Duplex: On |
| 013 | V-Transport 2: On |
| 014 | V-Transport 3: On |
| 015 | V-Transport 4: On |
| 017 | Regist Sn: On |
| 020 | Paper Exit: On |
| 023 | Inverter Sn: On |
| 027 | Duplex Relay: On |

| 053 | P-Feed 2: Off |
|-----|-------------------|
| 054 | P-Feed 3: Off |
| 055 | P-Feed 4: Off |
| 056 | P-Feed 5: Off |
| 057 | Regist Sn: Off |
| 060 | Paper Exit: Off |
| 063 | Inverter Sn: Off |
| 067 | Duplex Relay: Off |

| 7506 | Paper Jam/Size | |
|----------|----------------|---|
| 7506 006 | A5 LEF | |
| 7506 044 | HLT LEF | |
| 7506 133 | A4 SEF | |
| 7506 134 | A5 SEF | |
| 7506 142 | B5 SEF | Displays the total number of jams by paper size |
| 7506 164 | LG SEF | |
| 7506 166 | LT SEF | |
| 7506 172 | HLT SEF | |
| 7506 255 | Other | |

| | Dsply-P Jam Hist |
|------|---|
| 7507 | Displays the copy jam history in groups of 10, starting with the most recent 10 jams. Display contents are as follows: CODE is the SP7-504-nnn number. SIZE is the ASAP paper size (hexadecimal value, see below table). TOTAL is the total jam error count (SP7-502) DATE is the date the jams occurred (MMM DD HH:MM:SS YYYY). |

| 7507 001 | Latest | |
|----------|----------|---|
| 7507 002 | Latest 1 | |
| 7507 003 | Latest 2 | |
| 7507 004 | Latest 3 | Sample Display: |
| 7507 005 | Latest 4 | CODE: 007 SIZE: 06 TOTAL: 0000334 DATE: Feb 18 02:45:48 2011 |
| 7507 006 | Latest 5 | |
| 7507 007 | Latest 6 | |
| 7507 008 | Latest 7 | |
| 7507 009 | Latest 8 | |
| 7507 010 | Latest 9 | |

| Paper Size | Code (hex) | Paper Size | Code (hex) |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| A5 LEF | 06 | B5 SEF | 8E |
| B5 LEF | 0E | DLT SEF | A0 |
| LT LEF | 26 | LG SEF | A4 |
| HLT LEF | 2C | LT SEF | A6 |
| A4 SEF | 85 | Others | FF |
| A5 SEF | 86 | | |

| 7004 | ROM Info Display | |
|----------|-------------------------------|---|
| 7801 | Displays the ROM Information. | |
| 7801 002 | P/#: Engine | Engine Parts number |
| 7801 009 | P/#: PFU1 | Parts Number, Standard Paper Tray |
| 7801 019 | P/#: PFU2 | Parts Number, 1st Optional Paper Tray |
| 7801 040 | P/#: PFU3 | Parts Number, 2nd Optional Paper Tray |
| 7801 041 | P/#: PFU4 | Parts Number, 3rd Optional Paper Tray |
| 7801 102 | Version: Engine | Version, Engine |
| 7801 109 | Version: PFU1 | Version, Standard Paper Tray |
| 7801 119 | Version: PFU2 | Version, 1st Optional Paper Tray |
| 7801 140 | Version: PFU3 | Version, 2nd Optional Paper Tray |
| 7801 141 | Version: PFU4 | Version, 3rd Optional Paper Tray |
| 7801 255 | Memory/Version/PN | Displays a list of ROM and Software version that can be got in SP-7910 and SP-7911. |

| 7803 | PM Counter | |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| 7803 001 | Paper | Displays the PM counter. This is not a page counter. It estimates the page count using the engine rotation cycle count. It counts up one page when the engine has made the average number of rotations that is required for one page of a three-page job. |
| 7803 002 | Fusing Unit: Pages | Fusing Unit Page numbers [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |
| 7803 003 | Fusing Unit: Dist | Fusing Unit Distance [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm] |
| 7803 004 | Fusing Unit: Rate | Fusing Unit used rate [0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %] |

| 7803 005 | Trans Rol:Pages | Transfer Roller Page numbers [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 7803 006 | Trans Rol:Dist | Transfer Roller Distance [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1 mm] |
| 7803 007 | Trans Rol:Rate | Transfer Roller used rate [0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %] |
| 7803 008 | Feed Rol: Pages | Feed Roller Page numbers [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |
| 7803 010 | Feed Rol: Rate | Feed Roller used rate [0 to 255 / 0 / 1 %] |

| 7904 | PM Count.Reset | | |
|----------|--|------------------------------------|--|
| 7804 | Resets the PM counter. To reset, press [#Enter]. | | |
| 7804 001 | Paper | Paper Clears the Paper counter | |
| 7804 002 | All | Clears the all PM counters | |
| 7804 003 | Fusing Unit | Clears the Fusing unit counter | |
| 7804 004 | Transfer Roller | Clears the Transfer Roller counter | |
| 7804 005 | Paper Feed Roller | Clears the Feed Roller counter | |

| 7807 | Reset-SC/Jam | |
|----------|--------------|--|
| 7807 001 | Reset-SC/Jam | Resets the SC and jam counters. To reset, press [#Enter]. • This SP does not reset the jam history counter: SP7-507 |

| 7832 | Display-Self-Diag | |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 7832 001 | Display-Self-Diag | Press [OK] to display a list of error codes. Nothing is displayed if no errors have occurred. |

| 7836 | Resident Memory | |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 7836 001 | Resident Memory | Displays the memory capacity of the controller system. |

| 7901 | Assert Info. | |
|----------|-----------------|---|
| 7901 001 | File Name | Records the location where a problem is |
| 7901 002 | Number of Lines | detected in the program. The data stored in thi |
| 7901 003 | Location | SP is used for problem analysis. |

| 7904 | Near End Timing | |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 7904-001 | Maintenance Kit | Sets the Near End Timing of the Maintenance Kit. [0 to 2 / 1 / 1] |

| | AIO Information | |
|----------|--|---|
| 7931 | Displays information about the AIO. Returns a value of "0" if the number stored in the cartridge is not recognized. This is information on the AIO ID Chip so if the AIO is not installed, if the AIO is not set properly, or if the front door is open, no value will be displayed because the machine cannot communicate with the AIO. | |
| 7931 001 | Machine ID | Identification number of the machine (Model Name) [0x00 to 0xFF / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 7931 002 | Version | Cartridge version number [0x00 to 0xFF / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 7931 003 | Brand ID | Displays the OEM brand [0x00 to 0xFF / 0x00 / 0x01] 1: Ricoh |
| 7931 004 | Area ID | Displays the area ID [0x00 to 0xFF / 0x00 / 0x01] 1: DOM (Japan 2: NA (North America) 3: EU (Europe) 4: Asia |
| 7931 005 | Class ID | Displays the part code number [0x00 to 0xFF / 0x00 / 0x01] 1: 6K 3: 15K |
| 7931 006 | Color ID | Displays "0" for the color of the toner (Black), this is the only setting for this machine. [0x00 to 0xFF / 0x00 / 0x01] |
| 7931 007 | Maintenance ID | Displays the maintenance ID [0x00 to 0xFF / 0x00 / 0x01] 1: Printer (no maintenance contract) 3: Accessories |

| 7931 008 | New AIO | Displays the conditions of AIO [0 to 100 / 0 / 1] 0: Norma l 64: New AIO |
|----------|-----------------|---|
| 7931 009 | Recycle Count | Displays the recycle count of AIO [0 to 255 / 0 / 1] |
| 7931 010 | EDP Code | Displays the toner order code, the code is a string of ASCII characters. Default: 6 |
| 7931 011 | Serial No. | Displays an ASCII string that identifies the manufacturer Default: 16 Note This data is originally entered as BCD and changes into a 16-character string in order to convert it to ASCII. However, only 10 bytes can be used to communicate with the controller, so the 16 bytes are truncated to 10 bytes. |
| 7931 012 | Remaining Toner | Displays "0" to "100" (the percentage of toner remaining in the cartridge) [0 to 100 / 0 / 20] |
| 7931 013 | Toner End | N: Toner near end E: Toner end Default: 1 |
| 7931 014 | Refill Flag | Displays "RF" when the cartridge requires refilling Default: 2 |
| 7931 015 | R:Total Counter | Displays a number in the range "0" to "99999999", this is the total count at time of installation. [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |

| 7931 016 | E:Total Counter | Displays a number in the range "0" to "99999999", this is the total count at toner end. [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| 7931 017 | Unit Counter | Displays a number in the range "0" to "99999999", this is the total number of pages output by the AIO unit. Counter adds once for each sheet output. [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |
| 7931 018 | Install Date | Displays Year-Month-Date of installation for the AIO unit, this setting updates automatically through a serial interface with the machine when the new unit is installed. Default: 8 |
| 7931 019 | Toner End Date | Displays Year-Month-Date when toner end occurred. Default: 8 |
| 7931 020 | Conductor Time1 | Displays a number in the range "0" to |
| 7931 021 | Conductor Time2 | "99999999", this is the count for OPC. [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |
| 7931 022 | Conductor Time3 | ↓ Note |
| 7931 023 | Conductor Time4 | This information resides at four locations (020, 021, 022, 023. The recycle count determines where the value is written. The counter increments by "1" for ev 6 sec. of drum rotation time. To calculate the actual time in sec., multiply the displayed value by 6. |

| | AIO Info: Log | |
|----------|--|---|
| 7941 | Displays information about the AIO log. Returns a value of "0" if the number stored in the cartridge is not recognized. This is information on the AIO ID Chip so if the AIO was not installed the AIO was not set properly, or if the front door was open, no value would be logged because the machine could not communicate with AIO. | |
| 7941 001 | Log1: Serial No. | Displays an ASCII string in the Log1, that identifies the manufacturer Default: 16 Note This data is originally entered as BCD and changes into a 16-character string in order to convert it to ASCII. However, only 10 bytes can be used to communicate with the controller, so the 16 bytes are truncated to 10 bytes. |
| 7941 002 | Log1: Refill Flag | Displays "RF" when the cartridge requires refilling Cartridge version number in the Log1 Default: 2 |
| 7941 003 | Log1: Install Date | Displays Year-Month-Date of installation for the AIO unit in the Log1, this setting updates automatically through a serial interface with the machine when the new unit is installed Default: 8 |
| 7941 004 | Log1: R: TCounter | Displays a logged number in the range "0" to "99999999" in the Log1. this is the total count at time of installation [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |

| 7941 005 | Log2: Serial No. | Displays an ASCII string in the Log2, that identifies the manufacturer Default: 16 Note This data is originally entered as BCD and changes into a 16-character string in order to convert it to ASCII. However, only 10 bytes can be used to communicate with the controller, so the 16 bytes are truncated to 10 bytes. |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| 7941 006 | Log2: Refill Flag | Displays "RF" when the cartridge requires refilling Cartridge version number in the Log2 Default: 2 |
| 7941 007 | Log2: Install Date | Displays Year-Month-Date of installation for the AIO unit in the Log2, this setting updates automatically through a serial interface with the machine when the new unit is installed Default: 8 |
| 7941 008 | Log2: R: TCounter | Displays a logged number in the range "0" to "99999999" in the Log2, this is the total count at time of installation [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |
| 7941 009 | Log3: Serial No. | Displays an ASCII string in the Log3, that identifies the manufacturer. Default: 16 Note This data is originally entered as BCD and changes into a 16-character string in order to convert it to ASCII. However, only 10 bytes can be used to communicate with the controller, so the 16 bytes are truncated to 10 bytes. |
| 7941 010 | Log3: Refill Flag | Displays "RF" when the cartridge requires refilling Cartridge version number in the Log3 Default: 2 |

| 7941 011 | Log3: Install Date | Displays Year-Month-Date of installation for the AIO unit in the Log3, this setting updates automatically through a serial interface with the machine when the new unit is installed Default: 8 |
|----------|--------------------|--|
| 7941 012 | Log3: R: TCounter | Displays a logged number in the range "0" to "99999999" in the Log3, this is the total count at time of installation [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |
| 7941 013 | Log4: Serial No. | Displays an ASCII string in the Log4, that identifies the manufacturer Default: 16 Note This data is originally entered as BCD and changes into a 16-character string in order to convert it to ASCII. However, only 10 bytes can be used to communicate with the controller, so the 16 bytes are truncated to 10 bytes. |
| 7941 014 | Log4: Refill Flag | Displays "RF" when the cartridge requires refilling Cartridge version number in the Log4 Default: 2 |
| 7941 015 | Log4: Install Date | Displays Year-Month-Date of installation for the AIO unit in the Log4, this setting updates automatically through a serial interface with the machine when the new unit is installed. Default: 8 |
| 7941 016 | Log4: R: TCounter | Displays a logged number in the range "0" to "99999999" in the Log4, this is the total count at toner end [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |

| 7941 017 | Log5: Serial No. | Displays an ASCII string in the Log5, that identifies the manufacturer Default: 16 Note This data is originally entered as BCD and changes into a 16-character string in order to convert it to ASCII. However, only 10 bytes can be used to communicate with the controller, so the 16 bytes are truncated to 10 bytes. |
|----------|--------------------|---|
| 7941 018 | Log5: Refill Flag | Displays "RF" when the cartridge requires refilling. Cartridge version number in the Log5 Default: 2 |
| 7941 019 | Log5: Install Date | Displays Year-Month-Date of installation for the AIO unit in the Log5, this setting updates automatically through a serial interface with the machine when the new unit is installed. Default: 8 |
| 7941 020 | Log5: R: TCounter | Displays a logged number in the range "0" to "99999999" in the Log5, this is the total count at toner end. [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |

| 7993 | Total counter (Engine) | |
|----------|------------------------|---|
| 7993 001 | Total counter | Displays the engine total counter. It counts up for all prints, including service reports. [0 to 999999999 / 0 / 1] |

SP8XXX: Data Log 2

The SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation. The mode of operation is referred to as an 'application'. Before reading the Group 8 Service Tables, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

| Prefix | Application | What It Means |
|--------|-------------|--|
| T: | Total | Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.). |
| P: | Print | Totals (pages, jobs, etc.) executed for each application when the job was not stored on the document server. |
| 0: | Other | Other applications (external network applications, etc.). Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) are also counted. |

Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs.

Vote

• All of the Group 8 SPs are reset with SP5801-001 Memory All Clear.

| 8381 | T:Total PrtPGS | These SPs count the number of pages printed by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages increments. [0 to 99999999/0/1] |
|----------|----------------|--|
| 8381 001 | Field Number | |
| 8384 | P:Total PrtPGS | |
| 8384 001 | Field Number | |
| 8387 | O:Total PrtPGS | |
| 8387 001 | Field Number | |

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the

following pages are not counted as printed pages:

- Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
- Reports printed to confirm counts.
- All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
- Test prints for machine image adjustment.
- Error notification reports.
- Partially printed pages as the result of a jam.

| 8391 | LSize PrtPGS | |
|----------|----------------|---|
| 8391 001 | A3/DLT, Larger | These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger. [0 to 99999999/0/1] |

| 8411 | Prints/Duplex | |
|----------|---------------|---|
| 8411 001 | Prints/Duplex | This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0 to 99999999/0/1] |

| | T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | | |
|----------|--|--|--|
| 8421 | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | | |
| | P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | | |
| 8424 | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the printer application. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | | |
| | O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb | | |
| 8427 | These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications [0 to 99999999/0/1] | | |
| 842x 001 | Simplex> Duplex | | |

| 842x 004 | Simplex Combine | |
|----------|-----------------|----------------------------|
| 842x 005 | Duplex Combine | |
| 842x 006 | 2> | 2 pages on 1 side (2-Up) |
| 842x 007 | 4> | 4 pages on 1 side (4-Up) |
| 842x 008 | 6> | 6 pages on 1 side (6-Up) |
| 842x 009 | 8> | 8 pages on 1 side (8-Up) |
| 842x 010 | 9> | 9 pages on 1 side (9-Up) |
| 842x 011 | 16> | 16 pages on 1 side (16-Up) |
| 842x 012 | Booklet | |
| 842x 013 | Magazine | |
| | | |

- These counts are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.

| | T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | | |
|----------|--|--|--|
| 8441 | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by all applications. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | | |
| | P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | | |
| 8444 | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | | |
| | O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size | | |
| 8447 | These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | | |
| 844x 001 | A3 | | |
| 844x 002 | A4 | | |

| 844x 003 | A5 |
|----------|------------------|
| 844x 004 | B4 |
| 844x 005 | B5 |
| 844x 006 | DLT |
| 844x 007 | LG |
| 844x 008 | LT |
| 844x 009 | HLT |
| 844x 010 | Full Bleed |
| 844x 254 | Other (Standard) |
| 844x 255 | Other (Custom) |

• These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

| | PrtPGS/Ppr Tray | |
|----------|---|--------------------------|
| 8451 | These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | |
| 8451 001 | Bypass Tray | Bypass Tray |
| 8451 002 | Tray 1 | Main Machine |
| 8451 003 | Tray 2 | Paper Tray Unit (Option) |
| 8451 004 | Tray 3 | Paper Tray Unit (Option) |
| 8451 005 | Tray 4 | |
| 8451 006 | Tray 5 | |
| 8451 007 | Tray 6 | Currently not used |
| 8451 008 | Tray 7 | Currently not used. |
| 8451 009 | Tray 8 | |
| 8451 010 | Tray 9 | |

System laintenance Reference

| 8451 011 | Tray 10 |
|----------|---------|
| 8451 012 | Tray 11 |
| 8451 013 | Tray 12 |
| 8451 014 | Tray 13 |
| 8451 015 | Tray 14 |
| 8451 016 | Tray 15 |

| | T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type | |
|----------|---|--|
| 8461 | [0 to 99999999/0/1] These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications. These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. These counts are based on output timing. Blank sheets (covers, chapter covers, slip sheets) are also counted. During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1. | |
| | P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type | |
| 8464 | These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application. | |
| 846x 001 | Normal | |
| 846x 002 | Recycled | |
| 846x 003 | Special | |
| 846x 004 | Thick | |
| 846x 005 | Normal (Back) | |
| 846x 006 | Thick (Back) | |
| 846x 007 | ОНР | |
| 846x 008 | Other | |

| | T:PrtPGS/FIN |
|----------|--|
| 8521 | [0 to 99999999/0/1] These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by all applications. |
| | P:PrtPGS/FIN |
| 8524 | These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application. [0 to 99999999/0/1] |
| 852x 001 | Sort |
| 852x 002 | Stack |
| 852x 003 | Staple |
| 852x 004 | Booklet |
| 852x 005 | Z-Fold |
| 852x 006 | Punch |
| 852x 007 | Other |
| 852x 008 | Inside-Fold |
| 852x 009 | Three-IN-Fold |
| 852x 010 | Three-OUT-Fold |
| 852x 011 | Four-Fold |
| 852x 012 | KANNON-Fold |
| 852x 013 | Perfect-Bind |
| 852x 014 | Ring-Bind |

System Maintenanc Reference

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

| 8551 ^{*1} | T:FIN Books |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| | [0 to 99999999/0/1] |
| 8554* ¹ | P:FIN Books |
| | [0 to 99999999/0/1] |
| 855x 001 | Perfect-Bind |
| 855x 002 | Ring-Bind |

| 8581 | T:Counter | |
|----------|-----------|---|
| 8581 001 | Total | These SPs count the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed [0 to 99999999/0/1] |

| | O:Counter | |
|----------|---|--|
| 8591 | These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper used, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | |
| 8591 001 | A3/DLT | |
| 8591 002 | Duplex | |

| | CvgCounter | |
|----------|---|----------------------|
| 8601 | These counts correspond to the total counts recorded with the mechanical counter. | |
| 8601 001 | Cvg: BW % | Coverage: BW Pages |
| 8601 011 | Cvg: BW Pages | Coverage: BW Percent |

| 9647 | SDK Apli Counter | *CTL | [0 to 9999999/ 0 / 1] |
|----------|---|------|-----------------------------|
| 8617 | These SPs count the total printout pages for each SDK applicaion. | | es for each SDK applicaion. |
| 8617 001 | SDK-1 | | |
| 8617 002 | SDK-2 | | |
| 8617 003 | SDK-3 | | |
| 8617 004 | SDK-4 | - | |
| 8617 005 | SDK-5 | | |
| 8617 006 | SDK-6 | | |

| | Func Use Counter DFU | |
|-----------|---|--|
| 8621 | This SP counts the number of development roller rotations for development. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | |
| 001 to 64 | 64 Function-001 to -064 | |

| 8771 | Dev Counter | |
|----------|-------------|---|
| 8771 001 | Total | This SP counts the number of development roller rotations for development. [0 to 99999999/0/1] |

| 8781 | Toner_Botol_Info. | |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 8781 001 | ВК | This SP displays the count for the number of toner bottles used. The count is done based on the assumption that one toner bottle yields about 1,000 printed pages. |

| 8801 | Toner Remain |
|------|--------------|
|------|--------------|

| | 8801 001 | К | This SP displays (as a percentage) the amount of |
|--|----------|---|---|
| | | | toner remaining. This precise method of |
| | | | measuring remaining toner supply (1% steps) is |
| | | | better than other machines in the market that can |
| | | | only measure in increments of 10 (10% steps). |
| | | | [0 to 100/0/1] |

| | Cvr Cnt:0-10% | |
|----------|--|--|
| 8851 | These SPs count the percentage of dot coverage for K toner. [0 to 99999999] | |
| 8851 011 | 0~2%:BK | |
| 8851 021 | 3~4%:BK | |
| 8851 031 | 5~7%:BK | |
| 8851 041 | 8~10%:BK | |

| 8861 | Cvr Cnt:11-20% | |
|----------|----------------|---|
| 8861 001 | вк | This SP counts the number of prints that had a percentage of black dot coverage in the range 11-20%. [0 to 99999999] |

| 8871 | Cvr Cnt:21-30% | |
|----------|----------------|---|
| 8871 001 | вк | This SP counts the number of prints that had a percentage of black dot coverage in the range 21-30%. [0 to 99999999] |

| 8881 | Cvr Cnt: 31%- | |
|----------|---------------|--|
| 8881 001 | вк | This SP counts the number of prints that had a percentage of black dot coverage in the range above 31%. [0 to 99999999] |

| 8891 | Page/Toner Bottle | |
|----------|-------------------|--|
| 8891 001 | ВК | |
| 8901 | Page/Ink_Prev1 | |
| 8901 001 | вк | |
| 8911 | Page/Ink_Prev1 | |
| 8911 001 | ВК | |

| 8921 | Cvr Cnt/Total | |
|----------|---|--|
| | These counters count the percentage of dot coverage for K toner. (This machine uses only black toner) | |
| 8921 001 | Coverage (%):BK | |
| 8921 011 | Coverage/P:BK | |

| | Machine Status | | |
|----------|--|--|--|
| 8941 | These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement in their compliance with ISO Standards. [0 to 99999999/0/1] | | |
| 8941 001 | Operation Time | Engine operation time. Does not include time while controller is saving data to HDD (while engine is not operating). | |

| 8941 002 | Standby Time | Engine not operating. Includes time while controller saves data to HDD. Does not include time spent in Energy Save mode. |
|----------|-----------------------|---|
| 8941 003 | Energy Save Time | Includes time while the machine is performing background printing. |
| 8941 004 | Low Power Time | Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine on. Includes time while machine is performing background printing. |
| 8941 005 | Off Mode Time | Includes time while machine is performing background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches. |
| 8941 006 | SC | Total down time due to SC errors. |
| 8941 007 | PrtJam | Total down time due to paper jams during printing. |
| 8941 008 | OrgJam | Total down time due to original paper jams. |
| 8941 009 | Supply PM Unit End | Total down time due to toner end. |

| | AdminCounter | Machine Adm | inistration Counter | |
|----------|--------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|--|
| 8999 | quick reference to s below. | e: This machine supports K printing only, so the counts for 015 and 017 | | |
| 8999 001 | Total (SP8381 001) | | Total output (sheets fed out) | |
| 8999 007 | Printer: BW | | Total output for black & white | |
| 8999 013 | Duplex (SP8411 00 | 1) | Total output of duplexed sheets | |
| 8999 015 | Cvg:BW % (SP860 | 1 001) | Total output of K pages | |
| 8999 017 | Cvg:BW Pages (SP | 2 8601 011) | Total output of K pages | |

*1 These SPes are shown, however these cannot be used in this machine.

5.3 FIRMWARE UPDATE

🛨 Important

• Never turn off the machine while downloading the firmware.

5.3.1 TYPE OF FIRMWARE

The table lists the firmware programs used by the machine. All the programs can fit on one SD card.

| Program | What It Updates |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Engine | Printer engine control |
| Network DocBox | Document server firmware |
| Printer | Printer feature applications |
| System | Printer management |
| Network Support | Network application |
| RPCS | RPCS printer device driver |
| Postscript | Postscript printer device driver |
| PCL | PCL printer device driver |
| PDF | PDF printer device driver |
| PJL | PJL printer device driver |
| Font | Printer fonts |
| Web | Web application |
| SDK1 | SDK application |

5.3.2 PRECAUTIONS

Handling SD Cards

Observe these precautions when handling SD cards:

- Always turn off the main power switch before you insert or remove an SD card. Data on an SD card can be corrupted if you insert or remove an SD card while the main power switch is on.
- Never turn off the main power switch during downloading.
- Keep SD cards in a safe location. Never store SD cards in locations where they will be exposed to:
 - High temperature, high humidity
 - Direct sunlight
 - Strong vibrations
 - Magnetic fields generated by machines or electronic devices
- Handle SD cards carefully to avoid dropping them, bending, scratching, etc.

Upload/Download

In this service manual, "upload" and "download" have these meanings:

- Upload: Copying data from the printer to the SD card
- Download: Copying data from the SD card to the printer

Network Connection

A print job sent to the machine during firmware update will interrupt the procedure. Before you start the firmware update procedure tell the operator:

- The machine must be disconnected from the network.
- The machine cannot be used during firmware update.

5.3.3 MACHINE FIRMWARE UPDATE

Update programs one at a time. Follow the procedure below to update one program.

- 1. Prepare a card that contains the required program.
- 2. If the machine is on, switch it off.



m020r093

- 3. Remove the SD card cover [A] (F [B] x 1).
- 4. Insert the SD card into Slot 2 [D] (Lower).
- 5. Turn on the power. The screen remains blank for about 20 to 30 sec., "Please Wait" appears, then you will see "Engine", the first item available for selection.

Vote Note

- The first selection "Engine" will appear about 1 min. after switching the power on.
- 6. Scroll to the program to upgrade, then press [#Enter].
- 7. Press the [Online] to start the upgrade. You will see a series of messages. If you selected "Engine", for example", you would see:



| ROM Update | |
|------------|--|
| ***** | |

Updating

Updated Power Off On The "Power Off On" message appears after about 90 sec.

8. Turn off the power, remove the SD card from Slot 2 [D] (Lower), and turn on the power. -or-

If you intend to update another program, leave the SD card in Slot 2 [D] (Lower) and turn on the power.

Vote Note

• The firmware has not updated successfully if the "Power Off On" message does not appear. If this occurs, turn the machine power off/on and repeat the procedure.

m020r093

5.4 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD

5.4.1 UPLOADING NVRAM DATA

Follow this procedure to upload the NVRAM data to an SD card.

🔸 Note

- If the NVRAM data cannot be uploaded successfully before NVRAM replacement, you
 must manually input the required settings after the NVRAM has been replaced. For this
 reason, you should always print an SMC report before NVRAM replacement.
- 1. Enter the SP mode and do SP5990 1 (All) to print the SMC Report.
- 2. Exit the SP mode.
- 3. Turn off the main power switch.



- 4. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (lack x 1 [B]).
- 5. Insert an SD card into Slot 2 [D] (Lower).
- 6. Turn on the main power switch.
- 7. Enter the SP mode and do SP5824 (NVRAM Upload).
- 8. Push [#Enter].

<NVRAM Upload> execute?

- 9. Push [#Enter].
- 10. You will see "Processing". Then when you see "result=OK" the NVRAM data has been uploaded successfully.

This procedure creates an NVRAM folder on the SD card with one file that holds the NVRAM data. The file name is the serial number and the file extension is *.nv. **Example**: G1772700016.nv,

11. Exit the SP mode.

System laintenance Reference

- 12. Turn off the main power switch.
- 13. Remove the SD card.
- 14. Mark the SD card with the machine code for later reference. You will need this SD card to download NVRAM to the new NVRAM.

🔸 Note

One SD card can store the NVRAM data of two or more machines.

5.4.2 DOWNLOADING NVRAM DATA

Follow this procedure to download the data from the SD card to the NVRAM, after the NVRAM has been replaced.

Vote Note

- If the NVRAM data file cannot be downloaded successfully, the settings must be restored manually using the SMC report that was printed before NVRAM uploading.
- 1. Confirm that the main power switch is off.
- 2. Confirm that you have the SD card that contains the proper NVRAM data for the machine.



m020r093

- 3. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (lack x 1 [B]).
- 4. Insert the SD card into Slot 2 [D] (Lower).
- 5. Turn on the main power switch.
- 6. Enter the SP mode and do SP5825 (NVRAM Download).
- 7. Push [#Enter].

<NVRAM Download> execute?

8. Push [#Enter].

You will see "Processing". Then when you see "result=OK", the NVRAM data has been downloaded successfully.

Vote Note

- The machine cannot do the download if the file name in the SD card is different from the printer serial number.
- 9. Exit the SP mode.
- 10. Turn off the main power switch.
- 11. Remove the SD card.
- 12. Turn on the main power switch.



5.5 SD CARD APPLICATION MOVE

5.5.1 OVERVIEW

The service program "SD Card Appli Move" (SP5873) moves application programs from one SD card to another.

Obey these precautions during the SD Card Appli move procedure:

- The authentication data is moved with the application program from an SD card to the other SD card. Authentication fails if you try to use the SD card after you move the application program from this card to another SD card.
- Do not use an SD card if it has been used for some other work, for example, on a computer.
 Normal operation is not guaranteed when such SD card is used.
- Store the original SD card in a safe location after the procedure. The original SD card cannot be used but it must be saved because (1) the original card is the only proof that the user is licensed to use the application program, and (2) you may need to check the SD card and its data to solve a problem in the future.

5.5.2 MOVE EXEC

"Move Exec" (SP5873 1) moves application programs from the original SD card to another SD card. The application programs are moved from Slot 2 [D] to Slot 1 [C].

1. Turn off the main power switch.



m020r093

- 2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (X 1 [B]).
- 3. Insert the original SD card with the application in Slot 2 [D] (Lower).
- 4. Insert the SD card to receive the application in Slot 1 [C] (Upper).
- 5. Turn on the main power switch.
- 6. Enter the SP mode and do SP5873 1 "Move Exec."
- 7. Follow the messages on the operation panel to complete the procedure.
- 8. Exit the SP mode.
- 9. Turn off the main power switch.

M020/M021

- 10. Remove the original SD card from Slot 2 [D] (Lower).
- 11. Leave the other SD card in Slot 1 [C] (Upper).
- 12. Turn on the main power switch.
- 13. Confirm that the application program runs normally.
- 14. Tell the customer to store the original SD card in a safe place.

5.5.3 UNDO EXEC

"Undo Exec" (SP5873 2) restores an application to its original SD card. The application is moved from Slot 1 [C] (Upper) to Slot 2 [D] (Lower).

1. Turn off the main power switch.



- m020r093
- 2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (lack x 1 [B]).
- 3. Insert the SD card that currently holds the application in Slot 1 [C] (Upper).
- 4. Insert the original SD card to receive the restored application in Slot 2 [D] (Lower).
- 5. Turn on the main power switch.
- 6. Enter the SP mode and do SP5873 "Undo Exec."
- 7. Follow the messages on the operation panel to complete the procedure.
- 8. Exit the SP mode.
- 9. Turn off the main power switch.
- 10. Remove both SD cards.
- 11. Insert the SD card with the restored application in Slot 1 [C] (Upper).
- 12. Turn on the main power switch.
- 13. Confirm that the application operates normally.

5.6 MENU MODE

To enter and use the menu mode:

- 1. Press [Menu]
- 2. Press $[\mathbf{\nabla}]$ or $[\mathbf{\Delta}]$ to scroll through the menu listing.
- 3. Press [OK] to select.
- 4. To return to the previous level, press [Escape].
- 5. After changing the settings, press [Menu] to return to standby mode

🔸 Note

- The user menu list shown below can be printed: [Menu]> "List/Test Print"> [▼] 5 times> "Menu List"> [OK].
- The Print Jobs items (Sample, Locked, Hold, Stored Print) are not included in the printed list.

Menu Mode Tree

Here is quick summary of the menus.

| 1st Level | 2nd Level | | |
|-------------|--|--|--|
| Paper Input | Paper Size: Bypass Tray | | |
| | Paper Size: Tray 1 | | |
| | Paper Size: Tray 2 (Only when installed) | | |
| | Paper Size: Tray 3 (Only when installed) | | |
| | Paper Size: Tray 4 (Only when installed) | | |
| | Paper Size: Tray 5 (Only when installed) | | |
| | Paper Type: Bypass Tray | | |
| | Paper Type: Tray 1 | | |
| | Paper Type: Tray 2 (Only when installed) | | |
| | Paper Type: Tray 3 (Only when installed) | | |
| | Paper Type: Tray 4 (Only when installed) | | |
| | Paper Type: Tray 5 (Only when installed) | | |
| | Duplex Tray | | |

| 1st Level | 2nd Level | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|--|--|--|
| | Auto Tray Select | | | |
| | Tray Priority | | | |
| Maintenance | Quality Maintenance | | | |
| | General Settings | | | |
| | Timer Settings | | | |
| | HDD Management | | | |
| | Machine Settings Export | | | |
| List/Test Print | Multiple Lists | | | |
| | Config. Page | | | |
| | Error Log | | | |
| | Network Summary | | | |
| | Supply Info List | | | |
| | Menu List | | | |
| | PCL Config./Font Page | | | |
| | PS Config./Font Page | | | |
| | PDF Config./Font Page | | | |
| | Hex Dump | | | |
| System | Print Error Report | | | |
| | Auto Continue | | | |
| | Memory Overflow | | | |
| | Printer Language | | | |
| | Sub Paper Size | | | |
| | Default Printer Lang. | | | |
| | Auto Off | | | |

| 1st Level | 2nd Level | | | |
|------------------|---|--|--|--|
| | Print Compressed Data | | | |
| | Memory Usage | | | |
| | Spool Printing | | | |
| | Auto E-Mail Notify | | | |
| Print Settings | Machine Modes | | | |
| | PCL Menu | | | |
| | PS Menu | | | |
| | PDF Menu | | | |
| Security Options | Extended Security | | | |
| | Firmware Version | | | |
| | Network Security Level | | | |
| | Auto Erase Memory Setting | | | |
| | Erase All Memory | | | |
| | Transfer Log Setting | | | |
| Host Interface | I/O Buffer | | | |
| | I/O Timeout | | | |
| | Network | | | |
| | USB Settings | | | |
| Shut Down | (Executes before turning off the power) | | | |
| Language | (Select 1 of 15 available languages) | | | |

5.7 CONTROLLER BOARD DIP SWITCHES

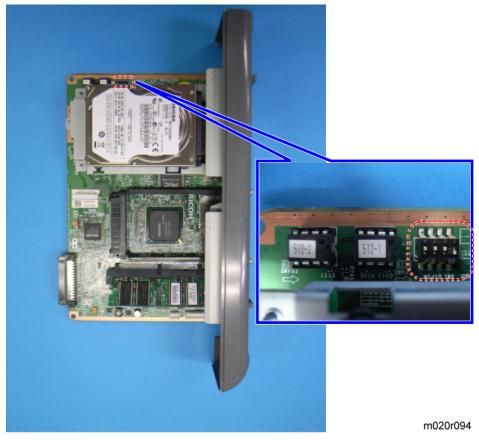
The controller board DIP switches must always be set as shown below.

Controller Board Default DIP SW Settings

| DIP SW | Setting |
|--------|---------|
| 1 | ON |
| 2 | OFF |
| 3 | OFF |
| 4 | OFF |

🛨 Important

• Do not change these settings.



System laintenance Reference

5.8 CARD SAVE FUNCTION

5.8.1 OVERVIEW

Card Save:

- The Card Save function is used to save print jobs received by the printer on an SD card with no print output. Card Save mode is toggled using printer Bit Switch #1 bit number 4. Card Save will remain enabled until the SD card becomes full, or until all file names have been used.
- Captures are stored on the SD card in the folder /prt/cardsave. File names are assigned sequentially from PRT00000.prn to PRT99999.prn. An additional file PRT.CTL will be created. This file contains a list of all files created on the card by the card save function.
- Previously stored files on the SD card can be overwritten or left intact. Card Save SD has "Add" and "New" menu items.
 - Card Save (Add): Appends files to the SD Card. Does not overwrite existing files. If the card becomes full or if all file names are used, an error will be displayed on the operation panel. Subsequent jobs will not be stored.
 - Card Save (New): Overwrites files in the card's /prt/cardsave directory.

Limitation:

 Card Save cannot be used with PJL Status Readback commands. PJL Status Readbacks will not work. In addition they will cause the Card Save to fail.

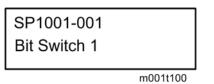
5.8.2 PROCEDURE

1. Turn the main power switch OFF.

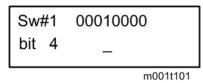


- 2. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (* x 1 [B]).
- 3. Insert the SD card into the service slot 2 [D] (Lower) of the controller board. Then turn the power ON.
- 4. Enter SP mode.

- 5. Select "Service" and press "#Enter" button twice.
- 6. Select "Bit Switch 1" and press "#Enter" button.



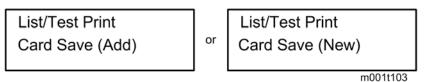
 Use the arrow keys to select "Bit Switch 4" and press "Enter" and use the arrow keys to turn bit 4 ON. The result should look like: **00010000**. By doing this Card Save option will appear in "List/Test Print".



- Press the "Escape" button several times, and use the arrow keys to select "3 End" to exit SP Mode.
- 9. Press the "Menu" button.
- 10. Use the arrow keys and select "List/Test Print".



11. Use the arrow keys and select "Card save (ADD)" or "Card save (New)".



- 12. To enable the newly configured settings, select "#" button and then press the "Escape" button to exit the "List/Test Print" menu.
- 13. Send a job to the printer.
- 14. As soon as the printer receives the data, it will be stored on the SD card automatically with no print output. Nothing is displayed on the screen indicating that a Card Save operation was successful.
- 15. Press the "Suspend/Resume" button and then the "Escape" button to exit Card Save mode.
- 16. Change the Bit Switch Settings back to the default 00000000.
- 17. Remove the SD card after main power switch is turned off.

TROUBLESHOOTING

| | REVISION HISTORY | | | | | |
|------|-----------------------------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Page | Page Date Added/Updated/New | | | | | |
| | | None | | | | |

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

6.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

6.1.1 SUMMARY

There are 4 levels of service call conditions

| Level | Definition | Reset Procedure | |
|-------|---|---|--|
| A | Fusing unit SCs shown on the operation panel. The machine is disabled. The user cannot reset the SC. | Do SP5810 and press [#Enter]. When "execute" is displayed, press [#Enter] again. Press [Escape]. Turn the machine power off/on. | |
| В | These SCs disable only the features that use the defective item. The user does not see these SCs in usual conditions. But, they are shown on the operation panel when the defective feature is used. | Set the main power switch to "off" then to "on". | |
| С | SCs that are not shown on the operation panel. They are recorded internally. | Recorded only. | |
| D | These SCs are shown on the operation panel. To reset these SCs, turn the operation switch or main power switch off and on. These SCs are shown again if the error occurs again. | Set the operation switch or the main power switch to "off" then to "on". | |

🔸 Note

- If the problem is with electrical circuit boards, disconnect the connectors first. Then
 reconnect the connectors before you replace the PCBs.
- If the problem is with a motor lock, first examine the mechanical load. Then replace motors or sensors.

Troubleshooting

6.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

| | | Product number error | The input product number (11 digits) is |
|-----|---|---|---|
| | | The input product number (11 | not proper. |
| 195 | D | The input product number (11 digits) is not equal to the product identification code. | Enter the product number again. |
| | | | SC195 is not SC bootable. |

| | D | Polygon motor error 1: ON timeout | • | Polygon motor/driver board harness loose or disconnected |
|-----|---|--|---|--|
| 202 | | The polygon mirror motor did not reach the targeted operating | | Polygon motor/driver board defective |
| 202 | | speed within T1 seconds after turning on or changing speed. * T1 = Time within which polygon rotation should become stable. | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harness properly. Replace the Polygon motor/driver board. |

| | | Polygon motor error 1: OFF timeout | • | Polygon motor/driver board harness loose or disconnected |
|-----|---|---|---|--|
| | | | • | Polygon motor/driver board defective |
| 203 | D | The polygon mirror motor did not leave READY status within 3 seconds after polygon motor switched off. | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harness properly. Replace the Polygon motor/driver board. |

| | | Polygon motor error 1: XSCRDY signal error | • | Polygon motor/driver board harness loose or disconnected |
|-----|---|---|---|--|
| | | | • | Polygon motor/driver board defective |
| 204 | D | The "H" status of XSCRDY signal is detected 4 times consecutively during the writing process. | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harness properly. Replace the Polygon motor/driver board. |

| 220 | D | Laser synchronization detection error: LD0 The laser synchronizing detection signal for the start position of the LD is not output within 500 ms after the LDB unit turns on with the polygon motor rotating normally. | • | Disconnected cable from the laser synchronizing detection unit or defective connection Defective laser synchronizing detector Laser beam does not go into the photo detector Defective GAVD Defective LD Driver Defective LDB Defective BCU |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. |

| | | Laser synchronization detection error: except LD0 | • | Laser beam does not go into the photo detector Defective GAVD |
|-----|---|--|---|---|
| 221 | D | The laser synchronizing detection signal for the start position of the other LDs are not output within 500 ms after LDB unit turns on | • | Defective GAVD Defective LD Driver Defective LDB Defective BCU |
| | | with the polygon motor rotating normally. | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. |

| | | FGATE ON error | • | Defective GAVD and PCI bridge |
|-----|---|--|---|--|
| | | The FGATE signal did not assert | • | ASIC Defective BCU Defective controller board Defective harness between BCU |
| 230 | D | within 1 second. (The BCU generates the FGATE signal and sends it to the LD unit when the registration sensor switches on.) | • | and LDB Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harness properly. Replace the harness. Replace LD unit. Replace the controller board. |

| | | FGATE OFF error | • | Defective GAVD and PCI bridge ASIC |
|-----|---|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| | | The FGATE signal did not go off | | |
| | | within 10 seconds after the | | |
| 231 | D | machine finished writing. (The | | |
| | | BCU generates the FGATE signal | - | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. |
| | | and sends it to the LD unit when | - | Replace the controller board. |
| | | the registration sensor switches | | |
| | | on.) | | |

| | с | LD error | • | Defective LD unit |
|-----|---|--|---|-------------------------------|
| | | | • | Disconnect harness. |
| 240 | | The IPU detected a problem at the LD unit. | • | Disconnect LD Driver. |
| | | | • | Connect the harness properly. |
| | | | • | Replace the LD unit. |

| | | Charge roller current leak | | Cartridge (charge roller) defective |
|-----|---|--|---|--|
| | | | • | High voltage supply board defective Disconnect harness. |
| 312 | D | The PWM duty output exceeded 50% for longer than 200 ms, indicating a leak in the charge roller current. | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harness properly. Replace the AIO unit. Replace the High voltage power supply board. |

| | | Development Bias leak | • | Bias applying section leak |
|-----|---|--|---|-------------------------------------|
| | | | • | High voltage supply board defective |
| | | The PWM duty output exceeded 50% for longer than 200 ms, indicating a leak in the charge roller current. | • | Disconnect harness |
| 320 | D | | • | Development Bias CN loose |
| 520 | | | • | Connect the harnesses properly. |
| | | | • | Replace the AIO. |
| | | | • | Replace High voltage power supply |
| | | | | board. |

| | D | Primary Transfer PP output leak | - | High voltage supply board defective. |
|-----|---|--|---|--------------------------------------|
| | | | • | Disconnect harness |
| | | The PWM duty output exceeded 50% for longer than 200 ms, | | Development Bias CN loose |
| 440 | | | - | Connect the harnesses properly. |
| | | indicating a leak in the charge | • | Replace the AIO. |
| | | roller current. | • | Replace High voltage power supply |
| | | | | board. |

| | | Main motor lock | • | Mechanical overload on the drive |
|-----|---|---|---|-----------------------------------|
| | | The machine does not detect a main motor lock signal within 1 | • | mechanism Main motor defective |
| | | second after the main motor | | |
| 500 | D | starts to rotate. | - | Remove foreign materials on the |
| | | -or- | | drive mechanism. |
| | | The machine does not detect a | - | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. |
| | | main motor lock signal for 250 ms | - | Connect the harnesses properly. |
| | | continuously while the main | - | Replace the main motor. |
| | | motor is rotating. | | |

| | | Exhaust fan motor error | | Mechanical overload on the Exhaust |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • | fan mechanism Exhaust fan harness loose or broken |
| 530 | D | The CPU detects an exhaust fan lock signal for more than 2 seconds. | • | Remove foreign materials on the drive mechanism. Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harnesses properly. Replace the Exhaust fan. |

| | | Reverse Fan Motor error | • | Mechanical overload on the |
|-----|---|--|---|---|
| | | | • | Reverse fan mechanism Reverse fan harness loose or broken |
| 531 | D | The CPU detects a Reverse fan lock signal for more than 2 seconds. | • | Remove foreign materials from the reverse fan. Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harnesses properly. Replace the reverse fan. |

| | | PSU Fan Motor error | • | Mechanical overload on the PSU |
|-----|---|--|---|---|
| | | | • | fan mechanism PSU fan harness loose or broken |
| 532 | D | The CPU detects a PSU fan lock signal for more than 2 seconds. | - | Remove foreign materials from the PSU fan. Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harnesses properly. Replace the PSU fan. |

| | | PSU2 Fan Motor error | • | Mechanical overload on the PSU2 |
|-----|---|---|---|---|
| | | | • | fan mechanism PSU2 fan harness loose or broken |
| 533 | D | The CPU detects a PSU2 fan lock signal for more than 2 seconds. | • | Remove foreign materials from the PSU2 fan. Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harnesses properly. Replace the PSU2 fan. |

| 534 | D | AIO Fan Motor error | • | Mechanical overload on the AIO fan |
|-----|---|---|---|--|
| | | The CPU detects an AIO fan lock signal for more than 2 seconds. | • | mechanism AIO fan harness loose or broken |
| | | | • | Remove foreign materials from the AIO fan. |
| | | | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harnesses properly. |
| | | | • | Replace the AIO fan. |

| | | Fusing thermistor error | Thermistor disconnectedDefective thermistorFusing unit connected improperly |
|-----|---|--|---|
| 541 | A | The fusing temperature remains lower than 0°C for over 7 seconds after the power relay switches on. | Connect the fusing unit properly. Connect the thermistor. Replace the thermistor. Note This SC cannot be reset by turning the power off and on. This SP should be reset by a CE. SP5810-01 can reset this SC. |

| | | Fusing temperature warm-up error | Defective thermistorThermistor improper installation |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 542 | A | Thermistor detects that the rate of heat increase is less than 7 degrees per 2 seconds consecutively 5 times. The fusing temperature did not reach the standby temperature within 24 seconds at the center of the hot roller after the main switch turned on. This SC will appear when condition 1 and 2 occur at the | Defective fusing lamp Install the thermistor properly. Replace the thermistor. Replace the fusing lamp. Vote This SC cannot be reset by turning the power off and on. This SP should be reset by a CE. |
| | | same time. | SP5810-01 can reset this SC. |

| | | Fusing overheat error - software1 | Defective TriacDefective IOBDefective engine board |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 543 | А | The detected temperature stays at 235°C for 1 second, and this consecutively occurs 10 times. | Replace the Controller board. Note This SC cannot be reset by turning the power off and on. This SP should be reset by a CE. SP5810-01 can reset this SC. |

| Defective IOBDefective engine board |
|---|
| Fusing control error |
| Fusing control error Replace the Controller board. Vote This SC cannot be reset by turning the power off and on. This SP should be reset by a CE. SP5810-01 can reset this SC. |
| • |

Troubleshooting

| | | Fusing lamp remains on 1 | Fusing thermistor defectiveDefective fusing lampThermostat actuation |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 545 | A | The fusing lamps remained ON at full capacity for more than 12 seconds after the fusing temperature attains reload temperature. | Replace the fusing thermistor. Replace the fusing lamp. Replace the thermostat. Note This SC cannot be reset by turning the power off and on. This SP should be reset by a CE. SP5810-01 can reset this SC. |

| | D | Zero cross signal detection error | Defective fusing relay |
|-----|---|--|--|
| 547 | | Zero cross signal is detected consecutively 4 times (for 200 ms) at power on with fusing relay being off. -or- Zero cross interrupts did not issue at the prescribed 3 second intervals. -or- The detection error occurs twice or more in 10 zero cross signal detections. This error is defined when the detected zero cross signal is less than 45. | Defective fusing relay circuit Shorted +24V fuse on the PSU Unstable AC power AC line noise Ac line noise Note As for an error due to a high frequency noise interference, this SC will not appear. In this case, SC557 will appear and output the log only. |
| | | | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Replace the PSU. |

| | | Zero cross frequency error | AC line noise (High frequency) |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 557 | С | Zero cross signals of wavelength 50-60 Hz were not detected within 5 seconds after the fusing relay switched on. | No action needed. Note This SC will perform logging only. The machine will start up normally. |

| | | Fuser 3 times jam error | Paper jams at the fusing roller |
|-----|---|--|---|
| 559 | A | The paper jam counter for the fusing unit reaches 3. The paper jam counter is cleared if the paper is fed correctly. This SC is activated only when this function is enabled with "Engine Maintenance" (default "OFF"). | This SC cannot be reset by turning the power off and on. This SP should be reset by a CE. See below note. |
| | | SC559 is not issued after | her SC559 is issued. The default is off. three consecutive jams in the paper unit. hing the machine power off/on does not |

reset the jam counter.

| | D | Paper tray unit communication error bank 1 | 1. 2. | Disconnect harnesses Defective Paper tray unit |
|-----|---|---|----------|---|
| | | Three consecutive errors occur during polling, after the paper tray unit has successful I2C communication. Note No paper tray can be | 3. 4. | Defective engine board External noise |
| 622 | | | • • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harnesses properly. Replace the Paper tray unit. Replace the engine board. |

Trouble-shooting

| | | Paper tray unit communication error bank 2 | 1. 2. 3. | Disconnect harnesses Defective Paper tray unit External noise |
|-----|---|---|----------------|--|
| 623 | D | Three consecutive errors occur during polling, after the paper tray unit has successful I2C communication. No paper tray can be used when this SC occurred. | - | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Connect the harnesses properly. Replace the Paper tray unit. |

| 624 | D | Paper tray unit communication error bank 3 | Disconnect harnessesDefective Paper tray unit | |
|-----|---|--|--|------------------------------------|
| | | Three consecutive errors occur | | External noise |
| | | during polling, after the paper tray | | |
| | | unit has successful I2C | | |
| | | communication. | | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. |
| | | Vote | • | Connect the harnesses properly. |
| | | No paper tray can be | Replace the Paper tray unit. | Replace the Paper tray unit. |
| | | used when this SC | | |
| | | occurred. | | |

| 625 | D | Paper tray unit communication error bank 4 | • | Disconnect harnesses Defective Paper tray unit | |
|-----|---|--|------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| | | Three consecutive errors occur | External noise | | |
| | | during polling, after the paper tray | | | |
| | | unit has successful I2C | | | |
| | | | communication. | | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. |
| | | Vote | • | Connect the harnesses properly. | |
| | | No paper tray can be | • | Replace the Paper tray unit. | |
| | | used when this SC | | , | |
| | | occurred. | | | |

| | | Engine-Controller Communication Error: Non-Response | • | Engine board defective Engine board harness loose, broken, defective |
|-----|---|---|----|--|
| 641 | D | There was no response to a | • | External noise |
| 011 | | frame sent from the controller board to the engine. | 1. | Turn the machine power Off and On. |
| | | There is still no response after | 2. | Keep away from noise sources. |
| | | resending frames 3 times in 100 | 3. | Replace the engine board harness. |
| | | milliseconds | 4. | Replace the engine board. |

| | | EEPROM communication error | • | External noise Defective EEPROM |
|-----|---|--|---|--|
| 669 | D | The EEPROM was not connected at power on, or read/write operations on the EEPROM failed. Retrying 3 times after the error detection cannot recover from the error. | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Replace the engine board (Replace the EEPROM). |

| | | Engine startup error | • | Connections between the engine |
|-----|---|--|----------------|---|
| | | | | board and the controller board are loose, disconnected, or damaged |
| 670 | D | The engine board fails to respond within 70 seconds when the machine is turned on. | 1. 2. 3. | Connect the harnesses properly or replace the new one. Replace the engine board. Replace the controller board. |

| | D | Illegal engine board detection error | • | Installing another machine's engine board |
|-----|---|---|----------|---|
| | | | • | Defective engine board |
| 671 | | | • | Incorrect NVRAM on the engine |
| 671 | | engine board is incorrect when the machine is turn on. | | board |
| | | | 1. 2. | Install the proper NVRAM. Replace the engine board with proper one. |

| | | RFID communication error | Defective Reader/Writer |
|-----|---|--|--|
| 681 | D | Machine cannot communicate with the RFID. Retrying 3 times after the error detection when | Disconnect harnesses External noise Defective RFID tag or no ID tag Defective RFID unit |
| | | communicating with a RF tag cannot recover from the error. | Replace the RFID unit. Replace the AIO unit. Turn the Power Switch Off and On. |

| | | RFID unit check error | | External noise |
|-----|---|--|---|--|
| 683 | С | When the unit checking is performed, a transmission error is detected more than 3 times. | • | Reset the AIO unit. Open and close the front cover. |

| | | CTL_PRREQ_N signal does not come. | • | External noise Defective engine board |
|-----|---|--|---|--|
| 688 | D | The PRREQ signal is not | | |
| | | received for 130 seconds after paper reaches the registration waiting point. | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Replace the engine board. |

| | D | GAVD communication error | • | Defective GAVD |
|-----|---|---|---|--|
| | | The machine detects an error in the data of the ASIC. | • | Defective CPU |
| 690 | | | • | Defective BCU |
| | | | • | Turn the Power Switch Off and On. Replace the engine board. |

| | | Bank over stacking error | Excess bank stack |
|-----|---|-----------------------------|--|
| 790 | D | More than 4 PTUs installed. | Decrease the number of PTUs to within 4. |

| | | Fatal kernel error | | |
|-----|---|---|--|--|
| 819 | D | Due to a control error, a RAM overflow occurred during system processing. One of the following messages was displayed on the operation panel. | System program defective HDD defective Controller board defective Optional board defective 1. Replace the controller firmware. 2. Replace the Controller board. 3. Replace the optional board or HDD. | |
| | | 0x5032 | P2ERR n n= 1 digit arbitrary number that shows which error bit is 'ON'. | |
| | | 0x6261 | bad dir | |
| | | 0x554C | UL | |
| | | Other | - | |

For more details about this SC code error, execute SP5990 to print an SMC report so you can read the error code. The error code is not displayed on the operation panel.

| | | Self-Diagnostic Error: CPU | • | Controller board defective |
|-----|---|--|----------|--|
| 820 | D | The central processing unit | • | Software defective |
| 020 | | returned an error during the self-diagnostic test. | 1. 2. | Replace the software. Replace the controller board. |

| 833 | | Self-diagnostic error 8: Engine I/F ASIC | • | ASIC (engine board defective) |
|----------------------|---|---|----|-------------------------------|
| 0F30 0F31 0F41 | D | ASIC for system control could not be detected. After the PCI configuration, the device ID for the ASIC could not be checked. | 1. | Replace the engine board. |

| 833 | | Self-diagnostic error 8: Engine I/F ASIC | • | Loose connection at the engine |
|------|---|---|----|--|
| | | | | board |
| | D | | • | ASIC (engine board defective) |
| 50B1 | U | The system control could not initialize or read the bus | 1. | Check for loose connections at the engine board. |
| | | connection. | 2. | Replace the engine board. |

| 833 | | Self-diagnostic error 8: Engine I/F ASIC | • | Loose connection at the engine board |
|------|---|---|----------|--|
| | | | • | ASIC (engine board defective) |
| 50B2 | D | Value of the SSCG register is incorrect. | 1. 2. | Check for loose connections at the engine board. Replace the engine board. |

| 951 | Б | IEEE 1394 I/F error | • • | NIB (PHY), LINK module defective Controller board defective |
|-----|---|--|----------|--|
| 851 | В | Driver setting incorrect and cannot be used by the 1394 I/F. | 1. 2. | Change the interface board. Replace the controller board. |

| | | Wireless LAN Error 1 | • | Wireless LAN card missing (was removed) Improper installation of the Wireless LAN card |
|-----|---|--|----------|---|
| 853 | В | During machine start-up, the machine can get access to the board that holds the wireless LAN, but not to the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth). | 1. 2. | Turn the power switch Off and On. Install the wireless LAN card properly. |

| | | Wireless LAN Error 2 | • | Wireless LAN card missing (was removed) during operation |
|-----|---|---|----------|---|
| 854 | В | During machine operation, the machine can get access to the board that holds the wireless LAN, but not to the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth). | 1. 2. | Once turn off the oower, reinstall the wireless LAN card, and then turn on the power. Insert the wireless LAN card firmly. |

| 855 | в | Wireless LAN error 3 | • | Wireless LAN card defective Wireless LAN card connection incorrect |
|-----|---|--|----------|--|
| 000 | D | An error was detected on the Wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth). | 1. 2. | Connect the wireless LAN card correctly. Replace the wireless LAN card. |

| 856 | | Wireless LAN error 4 | • • | Wireless LAN card defective PCI connector (to the mother board) loose |
|-----|---|--|----------|---|
| 000 | В | An error was detected on the wireless LAN card (802.11b or Bluetooth). | 1. 2. | Connect the PCI connector firmly. Replace the wireless LAN card. |

| 957 | В | USB I/F Error | • | Bad USB card connection Defective controller board |
|-----|---|---|----------|--|
| 857 | D | The USB driver is not stable and caused an error. | 1. 2. | Connect the USB card correctly. Replace the controller board. |

| 858 | | Data encryption conversion error | • | Key acquisition error |
|-----|---|--|----|-------------------------------|
| | А | | | |
| 0 | | A serious error occurred during data encryption. | 1. | Replace the controller board. |

| 858 | | Data encryption conversion error | | |
|-----|---|--|---|--|
| | | | - | HDD key setting error |
| 1 | A | A serious error occurred during data encryption. | | Turn the machine power Off and On. If the error reoccurs, replace the controller board. |

| 858 | | | | NVRAM read/write error |
|-----|---|--|----|-------------------------|
| | А | Data encryption conversion error | - | NVICAW read/write error |
| 2 | | A serious error occurred during data encryption. | 1. | Replace the NVRAM. |

| 858 | | Data encryption conversion error | | NVRAM error |
|-----|---|--|----------|--|
| | | Data encryption conversion enor | - | |
| 30 | A | A serious error occurred during data encryption. | 1. 2. | Turn the machine power Off and On. If the error reoccurs, replace the controller board. |

| 858 | | | _ | |
|-----|---|--|----|--------------|
| | А | Data encryption conversion error | • | Other errors |
| 31 | | A serious error occurred during data encryption. | 1. | See SC991. |

| 859 | | HDD data encryption error | | HDD check error |
|-----|---|--|----|-----------------|
| 8 | В | Encryption of data on the hard disk failed | 1. | Format the HDD. |

| 859 | | HDD data encryption error | - | Power loss during encryption |
|-----|---|---|----|------------------------------|
| 9 | В | Encryption of data on the hard disk failed. | 1. | Format the HDD. |

| 859 | | HDD data encryption error | | Data read/write error |
|-----|---|---|----|-----------------------|
| 10 | В | Encryption of data on the hard disk failed. | 1. | See SC863. |

| 860 | в | HDD startup error at main power on HDD is connected but a driver | • | HDD is not initialized Level data is corrupted HDD is defective |
|-----|---|--|----|---|
| | D | error is detected. The driver does not respond with the status of the HDD within 30 s. | 1. | Format the HDD. Replace the HDD. |

| | | HDD re-try failure | • | Harness between HDD and controller board disconnected, defective HDD power connector disconnected HDD defective Controller board defective |
|-----|---|---|----------------------------|---|
| 861 | D | At power on the HDD was detected. Power supply to the HDD was interrupted after the system entered the energy save mode, but after the HDD was awakened from the energy save mode it did not return to the ready status within 30 sec. | 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. | Turn the machine power Off and On. Connect the HDD and the Controller board properly. Connect the HDD power connector. Replace the HDD. Replace the controller board. |

| | | | HE Note | DD defective |
|-----|---|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| | | | • | If the bad sectors are generated |
| | | | | at the image partition, the bad |
| 863 | D | HDD data read failure | | sector information is written to |
| | | | | NVRAM, and the next time the |
| | | | | HDD is accessed, these bad |
| | | | | sectors will not be accessed for |
| | | | | read/write operation. |

| The data written to the HDD cannot be read normally, due to bad sectors generated during operation. | 1. Replace the HDD. |
|--|---------------------|
|--|---------------------|

| | | HDD data CRC error | - | HDD defective |
|-----|---|---|----|------------------|
| 864 | D | During HDD operation, the HDD cannot respond to an CRC error query. Data transfer did not execute normally while data was being written to the HDD. | 1. | Replace the HDD. |

| | | HDD access error | • | HDD defective. |
|-----|---|---|----|------------------|
| 865 | D | HDD responded to an error during operation for a condition other than those for SC863, 864. | 1. | Replace the HDD. |

| | | SD card error 1: Confirmation | • | Program missing from the SD card |
|-----|---|--|----|---|
| 866 | D | The machine detects an electronic license error in the application on the SD card in the controller slot immediately after the machine is turned on. The program on the SD card contains electronic confirmation license data. If the program does not contain this license data, or if the result of the check shows that the license data in the program on the SD card is incorrect, then the checked program cannot execute and this SC code is displayed. | 1. | Download the correct program for the machine to the SD card. |

| | | SD card error 2: SD card removed | • | SD card is removed |
|-----|---|--|----|---|
| 867 | D | The SD card in the boot slot when the machine was turned on was removed while the machine was on. | 1. | Insert the SD card, then turn the machine off and on. |

| | | SD card error 3: SD card access | SD card not inserted correctly SD card defective Controller board defective |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 868 | D | An error occurred while an SD card was used. | Insert SD card correctly. Reformat the SD card. Note If you want to try to reformat the SD card, use SD Formatter Ver. 1.1. Replace the SD card. Replace the controller board. |

| | | Address book data error | HDD defective. |
|-----|---|---|--|
| 870 | В | Address book data on the hard disk was detected as abnormal when it was accessed from either the operation panel or the network. The address book data cannot be read from the HDD or SD card where it is stored, or the data read from the media is defective. | Initialize the HDD with SP5832. If this does not solve the problem, replace the HDD and initialize with SP5832. Note If you turn off the machine while the HDD is being accessed, this can damage the HDD. |

| | | HDD mail receive data error | The machine power was turned off during the HDD access HDD defective. |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 872 | в | The machine detected that the HDD was not operating correctly at power on. The machine detected that the HDD was not operating correctly (could neither read nor write) while processing incoming email | 1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832. If this does not solve the problem, replace the HDD and initialize with SP5832. Note If you turn off the machine while the HDD is being accessed, this can damage the HDD. |

| | | HDD mail send data error | HDD defective. |
|-----|---|---|---|
| 873 | В | An error was detected on the HDD immediately after the machine was turned on, or power was turned off while the machine used the HDD. | 1. Initialize the HDD with SP5832. If this does not solve the problem, replace the HDD and initialize with SP5832. Note If you turn off the machine while the HDD is being accessed, this can damage the HDD. |

| | | Delete All error 2: Data area | • | The HDD deleting program detected an error An error detected during the NVRAM data or others' deleting processes |
|-----|---|--|----|--|
| 874 | D | An error occurred while the machine deleted data from the HDD. Note The source of this error is the Data Overwrite Security Unit B660 running from an SD card. | 1. | Turn the main switch Off and On and try the operation again. |

| | | Delete All error 1: HDD | • | HDD defective |
|-----|---|--|----|-------------------------------------|
| | | A data error was detected for the HDD/NVRAM after the Delete All | | |
| | | option was used. | 1. | Turn the main switch off/on and try |
| 875 | D | Vote Note | | the operation again. |
| | | The source of this error | 2. | Install the Data Overwrite Security |
| | | is the Data Overwrite | | Unit again. For more, see section |
| | | Security Unit B660 | | "1. Installation". |
| | | running from an SD | | |
| | | card. | | |

| 876 | | Log data abnormal (1) | • | Log data corruption Software error NVRAM defective HDD defective |
|-----|---|--|----------------------|---|
| 1 | D | An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating. | 1. 2. 3. 4. | Initialize the HDD (See SP5832-004). Update the firmware. Replace the NVRAM. Replace the HDD. |

| 876 | | | • | No encryption module when |
|-----|---|--|----------------------------|---|
| | | Log data abnormal (2) | • | enabling log encryption. Software error NVRAM defective HDD defective |
| 2 | D | An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating. | 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. | Disenable log encryption. Reset or replace the encryption module. Update the firmware. Replace the NVRAM. Replace the HDD. |

| 876 | | Log data abnormal (3) | | Invalid encryption key Software error NVRAM defective HDD defective |
|-----|---|--|----------------------------|--|
| 3 | D | An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating. | 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. | Disenable log encryption. Initialize the HDD (See SP5832-004). Update the firmware. Replace the NVRAM. Replace the HDD. |

| 876 | | | • | Log data encrypted when disabling |
|-----|---|--|----------------------|---|
| | D | Log data abnormal (4) | | encryption No log data encrypted when enabling the encryption Software error NVRAM defective HDD defective |
| 4 | | An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating. | 1. 2. 3. 4. | Initialize the HDD (See SP5832-004). Update the firmware. Replace the NVRAM. Replace the HDD. |

| 876 | | Log data abnormal (5) | • | Replacing the NVRAM only Replacing the HDD only Software error NVRAM defective HDD defective |
|-----|---|--|----------------------------------|---|
| 5 | D | An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating. | 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. | Restore the original NVRAM. Restore the original HDD. Initialize the HDD (See SP5832-004). Update the firmware. Replace the NVRAM. Replace the HDD. |

| 876 | | Log data abnormal (99) | • | Software error |
|-----|---|--|----------------|--|
| | | | • | NVRAM defective HDD defective |
| 99 | D | An error was detected in the handling of the log data at power on or during machine operation. This can be caused by switching the machine off while it is operating. | 1. 2. 3. | Update the firmware. Replace the NVRAM. Replace the HDD. |

| | | Data Overwrite Security SD card error | • | SD card defective |
|-----|---|--|----------------|--|
| 877 | В | The 'all delete' function did not execute but the Data Overwrite Security Unit (D362) is installed and activated. | 1. 2. 3. | Insert the SD card correctly. Replace the NVRAM. Reinstall the DOS from the SD card. |

Troubleshooting

| | | TPM electronic recognition error | • | Controller board defective |
|-----|---|--|----|-------------------------------|
| 878 | D | The main machine firmware failed to recognize TPM because USB flash is not operating or a system module was updated incorrectly. | 1. | Replace the controller board. |

| 900 | D | Electrical total counter error | NVRAM incorrect type NVRAM defective NVRAM data scrambled Unexpected error from external source |
|-----|---|--|--|
| | | The total counter contains something that is not a number. | 1. Replace the NVRAM. |

| | | Printer error 1 | • | Software defective Insufficient memory |
|-----|---|---|----------|---|
| 920 | В | An internal application error was detected and operation cannot continue. | 1. 2. | Turn the machine Off and On. Change the Controller firmware. |

| | | Printer error 2 | - | Font not on the SD card |
|-----|---|--|----|---|
| 921 | В | When the application started, the necessary font was not on the SD card. | 1. | Copy the necessary font on the SD card. |

| | | Software performance error | | Software defective *1 |
|-----|---|---|----------|---|
| 990 | D | The software attempted to perform an unexpected operation due to: 1) software bug 2) incorrect internal parameter 3) insufficient working memory | 1. 2. | Turn the machine power Off and On. Reinstall the controller and/or main firmware. |

| | | Software continuity error | Software defective *1 |
|-----|---|--|---|
| 991 | с | The software attempted to perform an unexpected operation. However, unlike SC990, the object of the error is continuity of the software. | 1. No operation required. Note This SC code does not appear on the panel, and is only logged. |

*1: In order to get more details about SC990 and SC991:

- 1. Execute SP7403 or print an SMC Report (SP5990) to read the history of the 10 most recent logged errors.
- If you press the zero key on the operation panel with the SP selection menu displayed, you will see detailed information about the recently logged SC990 or SC991, including the software file name, line number, and so on.
 1) is the recommended method, because another SC could write over the information for the previous SC.

| 992 | D | Unexpected Software Error | • | Software defective An error undetectable by any other SC code occurred |
|-----|---|---|----|--|
| 992 | | Software encountered an unexpected operation not defined under any SC code. | 1. | Turn the machine Off and On. |

Troubleshooting

| 995 | | CPM setting error | | |
|-----|---|---|----|---|
| 01 | | Defective engine board | : | Input the serial number with SP5811-004, and turn the main power switch off/on. |
| 02 | D | Defective NVRAM on the controller Defective controller | 2. | Install a new NVRAM, and turn off and on the main power switch after SC995-002 has occurred. Reinstall the previous NVRAM or download the information with SP5825-001, after that turn the main power off and On. |
| 03 | | Incorrect type controller installed Defective controller | | Replace the controller board with the correct type. |
| 04 | | Incorrect model controller installed | | Replace the controller with the correct model. |
| | | Note SC995 is not SC bootable | | |

| | | Application start error | • | Loose connection of RAM-DIMM, ROM-DIMM Software problem Controller board defective |
|-----|---|---|----------------|--|
| 998 | D | No applications start within 60 sec. after the power is turned on. | 1. 2. 3. | Check the setting of SP5875-001. If the setting is set to "1 (OFF)", change it to "0 (OFF)". Connect the RAM-DIMM, ROM-DIMM correctly. Reinstall the controller system firmware. Replace the controller board. |

6.2 ERROR MESSAGES

6.2.1 COMMON ERROR MESSAGES

Here is a list of common error messages, a description of the problems, and their solutions. This is just a reference information.

| 1st/2nd Message | Problem/Solution | |
|---|---|--|
| (A) Remove misfeed in Trays. Opn & cls Frt. Cov. | Paper jam at (A). Remove the jammed paper in the source tray, and then load the paper again. To reset the error, open the front cover and then close it. | |
| (B)(C) Open Front/Rear Cover and remove misfeed. | Paper jam at (B) (C) Open the front or rear cover, and then remove the jammed paper. | |
| (Y1) Remove misfeed in Tray 2. Opn & cls Frt. Cov. | Paper jam at (Y1) Remove the jammed paper in the source tray, and then load the paper again. To reset the error, open the front cover and then close it. | |
| (Y2) Remove misfeed in Tray 3. Opn & cls Frt. Cov. | Paper jam at (Y2) Remove the jammed paper in the source tray, and then load the paper again. To reset the error, open the front cover and then close it. | |
| (Y3) Remove misfeed in Tray 4. Opn & cls Frt. Cov. | Paper jam at (Y3) Remove the jammed paper in the source tray, and then load the paper again. To reset the error open the front cover and then close it. | |
| (Y4) Remove misfeed in Tray 5. Opn & cls Frt. Cov. | Paper jam at (Y4) Remove the jammed paper in the source tray, and then load the paper again. To reset the error open the front cover and then close it. | |
| (Z1)(Z2) Opn R.Cov/Tray1 & remove ppr. Opn & cls F.Cov. | Paper jam at (Z1) (Z2) Open the rear cover, or remove tray 1 and oper the front cover, and then remove the paper. | |

| 1st/2nd Message | Problem/Solution |
|---|--|
| @Remote Cert. update failed | Updating the @Remote certificate failed.Retry updating the @Remote certification. |
| Cannot connect=>Comm.Serv. Check proxy user/password. | The proxy user name or password is incorrect. Check the proxy server settings, and change the user name and/or password if they are incorrect. |
| Cannot connect with DHCP server.(101/201) | Cannot obtain IP address from DHCP server. Consult your network administrator. |
| Cannot connect with NetWare print server. (107/207) | Connection with NetWare print server is unavailable.Consult your network administrator. |
| Cannot print | Cannot print Check the file you want to print is a supported file type. Check for misfeeds and ask your network administrator for help. |
| Check network settings.(103/203) | The IP address setting is incorrect. Check the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address. Consult your network administrator. |
| Classification Code Error | A classification code is not specified for the print job. Enter a classification code using the printer properties and print the document again. |
| Connect failed: WirelessCard Turn power off, check card. | Wireless LAN card trouble Confirm that there is a Wireless LAN board installed. Check that it is a supported board. If it is, check it is installed correctly. Install the correct board properly |
| Cover Open. Please close the indicated cover. | Cover is open. Close the cover indicated on the control panel. |

| 1st/2nd Message | Problem/Solution |
|---|---|
| Duplex mode is in off position for (tray name) | The duplex mode for the indicated tray is off; you can only use one-sided printing. Press [Change] to change the tray's settings, press [JobReset] to reset the job, or press [Form Feed] to force printing. |
| Ethernet Board Error | An error on the Ethernet board is detected.Pull out and then re-install the controller board. |
| Failed to connect to server for Remote Diagnostics. | The printer cannot communicate with RemoteCommunication Gate.Check the connection to the Remote Server Gate. |
| Independent-supply toner | Independent-supply toner is set.Use toner recommended for this printer. |
| IPDS font error. Turn power switch off then on. Select Reset IPDS Fonts in Maintenance. | IPDS font error has occurred. Perform the shutdown procedure, and then turn off the power of the machine. Turn on the power again, and then execute [Reset IPDS Fonts]. |
| IPv6 Address already exists Link-local Address(109/209) | The same IPv6 address already exists.Consult your network administrator. |
| Pv6 Address already exists Stateless Address(109/209) | The same IPv6 address already exists.Consult your network administrator. |
| Pv6 Address already exists Manual Config. Address(109/209) | The same IPv6 address already exists.Consult your network administrator. |
| Load paper in (tray name) or [Cancel] to FormFeed. | There is no paper in the specified tray. Load the specified paper in the tray; press [JobReset] to reset the job. |
| Option RAM Error | The printer cannot detect an optional SDRAM module. It may be incorrectly installed. Check if it is installed properly. |

| 1st/2nd Message | Problem/Solution |
|--|--|
| Output tray is full. | The output tray is full. Remove the paper. |
| Parallel I/F Error | The printer's self diagnostic test failed due to a loopback error. Replace the IEEE 1284 board that caused the error. |
| Prepare Replacement Check print cartridge replacement(s). | The toner has run out, or the photoconductor has reached the end of its service life.Prepare a new AIO. |
| Printer Font Error. | There are problems with the printer's font file.Check the printer font file. |
| Problem with Hard Disk Please call service. | The printer cannot detect a hard disk. It may be incorrectly installed.Check if it is installed properly. |
| Problem:Wireless card Please call service. | The printer cannot detect a wireless LAN board. It may be incorrectly installed.Check if it is installed properly. |
| Repl Requrd Soon:Maint. Kit | You will need to replace the maintenance kit soon. Replace the maintenance kit. |
| Replace print cartridge. /Print Cartridge replacement is required.(Out of toner) | The toner has run out. Replace the AIO. |
| Replace print cartridge. /Print Cartridge replacement is required.(Waste Toner Bottle full) | The waste toner bottle is full. Replace the AIO |
| Replacmnt Requrd:Maint. Kit /Maintenance Kit Replacmnt is required. Press Menu key to check Supplies. | You need to replace the maintenance Kit. Obtain a new maintenance kit. |

| 1st/2nd Message | Problem/Solution |
|--|--|
| Replace print cartrdg soon./ Toner is almost empty. Contact your local vendor. | The toner is almost depleted.Obtain a new AIO. |
| SD Card authenticatn. failed Error recurs, call service. | Authentication from the SD card failed.Turn the power off, and then back on. |
| Set the Fusing Unit correctly. | The fusing unit may not be installed correctly.Turn the printer off and re-install the fusing unit. |
| Set the Print Cartridge correctly. | The AIO may not be installed correctly.Turn the printer off and re-install the AIO. |
| Supply order has failed. | The automatic supply order failed. The message indicates the supplies that the printer tried to order. |
| This NetBIOS name is already in use.(108/208) | The NetBIOS name specified for the printer is already in use by another device on the network.Consult your network administrator. |
| The same IPv4 Address already exists.(102/202) | The IPv4 address specified for the printer is already in use by another device on the network.Consult your network administrator. |
| The selected job has already been printed or deleted. | This message might appear if you print or delete a job from Web Image Monitor.Press Exit on the message screen. |
| USB has a problem. Please call service. | The printer has detected a USB board failure.Turn the power off, and then on again. |
| Values set for IPv6/Gateway addresses are invalid.(110/210) | The IPv6 address or gateway address is invalid.Check the network settings. |
| WPA Auth. incomplete.(211) | WPA authentication could not complete.Consult your network administrator. |

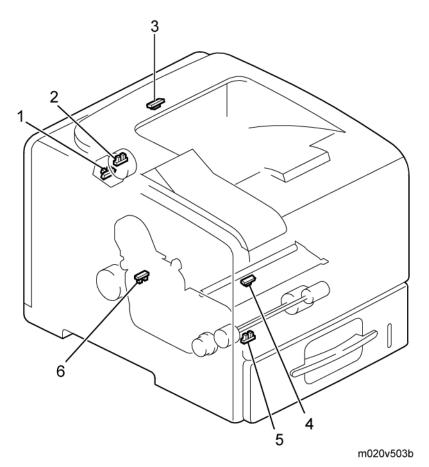
6.3 JAM DETECTION

6.3.1 PAPER JAM DISPLAY

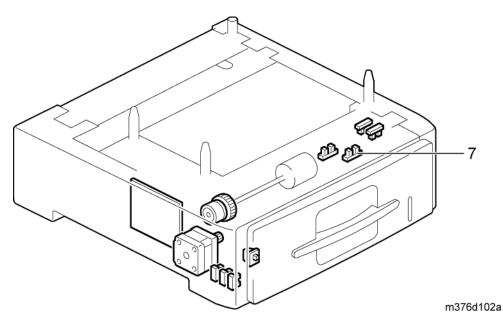
SP7-507 shows the paper jam history.

- **CODE**: Indicates the jam code.
- **SIZE**: Indicates the paper size code.
- **TOTAL**: Indicates the total counter (SP7-502-001).
- **DATE**: indicates the date when the jam occurred.

6.3.2 PAPER JAM SENSORS



Trouble[.] shootinç



- 1. Duplex entrance sensor
- 2. Paper overflow sensor
- 3. Paper exit sensor
- 4. Registration sensor
- 5. By-pass paper sensor
- 6. Duplex relay sensor
- 7. Vertical transport sensor (Optional paper feed tray)

6.3.3 JAM CODES AND DISPLAY CODES

| Code | Display | Description | LCD Display |
|------|-------------------------|---|--------------|
| 0 | - | Jam clearance | - |
| 1 | See "p.6-40" | Initial jams (Remainder, cover open, etc.) | See "p.6-40" |
| 3 | PFU1 tray / front cover | Paper is not fed from standard tray (PFU1). | A1 |
| 4 | PFU2 tray / front cover | Paper is not fed from 1st optional tray (PFU2). | Y1 |
| 5 | PFU3 tray / front cover | Paper is not fed from 2nd optional tray (PFU3). | Y2 |

| Code | Display | Description | LCD Display |
|------|--|---|-----------------------|
| 6 | PFU4 tray / front cover | Paper is not fed from 3rd optional tray (PFU4). | Y3 |
| 7 | PFU5 tray / front cover | Paper is not fed from 4th optional tray (PFU5). | Y4 |
| 8 | By-pass tray / front cover | Paper is not fed from By-pass tray. | A2 |
| 9 | PFU1 tray / front cover | Paper is not fed from duplex. | Z2 |
| 13 | PFU3 tray / front cover | 1st optional tray sensor does not detect paper. | Y2 |
| 14 | PFU4 tray / front cover | 2nd optional tray sensor does not detect paper. | Y3 |
| 15 | PFU5 tray / front cover | 3rd optional tray sensor does not detect paper. | Y4 |
| 17 | PFU1 tray / front cover | Registration sensor does not detect paper. | A1 |
| 20 | Front / rear cover / Fusing unit | Paper exit sensor does not detect paper. | B, C |
| 23 | Front / rear cover | Reverse exit sensor does not detect paper. | B, C |
| 27 | Rear cover | Duplex relay sensor does not detect paper. | Z1 |
| 53 | PFU1 / 2 tray, Front cover | 1st optional tray sensor does not turn off. | A1, Y1 |
| 54 | PFU1 / 2 / 3 tray, Front cover | A1, Y1, | |
| 55 | PFU1 / 2 / 3 / 4 tray, Front cover | 3rd optional tray sensor does not turn off. | A1, Y1, Y2,Y3 |
| 56 | PFU1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 tray Front cover | 4th optional tray sensor does not turn off. | A1, Y1, Y2, Y3, Y4 |

| Code | Display | Description | LCD Display |
|------|---------------------------------|--|-------------|
| 57 | Front cover | Registration sensor does not turn off. | В |
| 60 | Front / rear cover | Paper exit sensor does not turn off. | B, Z1 |
| 63 | Rear cover | Reverse exit sensor does not turn off. | Z1 |
| 67 | PFU1 tray, front/rear cover, | Duplex relay sensor does not turn off. | Z1, Z2 |

6.3.4 INITIAL JAM RELATIONS

| Code | Display | Sensors | LCD Display |
|------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| 1 | PFU1 tray / front cover | Standard tray (PFU1) (No sensor) | A1 |
| 1 | PFU2 tray / front cover | 1st optional tray sensor | Y1 |
| 1 | PFU3 tray / front cover | 2nd optional tray sensor | Y2 |
| 1 | PFU4 tray / front cover | 3rd optional tray sensor | Y3 |
| 1 | PFU5 tray / front cover | 4th optional tray sensor | Y4 |
| 1 | Front cover | Registration sensor | В |
| 1 | Front / rear cover | Paper exit sensor | B, Z1 |
| 1 | Rear cover | Reverse exit sensor | Z1 |
| 1 | PFU1 tray, front / rear cover | Duplex relay sensor | Z1, Z2 |

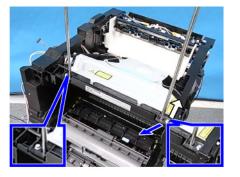
6.4 GENERAL TROUBLESHOOTING

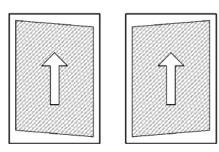
6.4.1 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

Registration Adjustment

Registration is adjusted in the user mode ("Maintenance-Registration"). For details, see the Printer Reference operation manual.

Parallelogram Image Adjustment





m020i002

Do the following procedure if a parallelogram is printed while adjusting the printing registration using a trimming pattern.

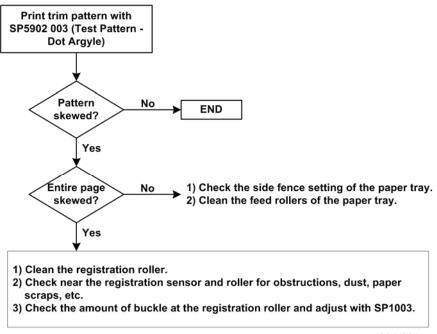
🔸 Note

- Use the scanner positioning pin (P/N: A0069104) for this adjustment.
- 1. Remove the upper cover (See "Upper Cover")
- 2. Put a positioning pin in one of the holes
- 3. Loosen four screws and move the laser unit.
- 4. Tighten the laser unit.
- 5. Print the trimming area pattern to check the image. If it is still the same, repeat steps 3 to 5.

Troubleshooting

6.4.2 SKEW ADJUSTMENT

Follow the instructions in this flowchart to correct image skew.



m001r901

6.4.3 STREAKS IN THE SUB SCAN DIRECTION

If you see streaks or lines at a regular interval in the sub scan direction:

- 1. Measure the width of the interval between the streaks.
- 2. Identify the component in the table below that is causing the problem (based on the size of the measured interval), then inspect that component.

| Interval Width (approx.) | Check: |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 96 mm | OPC Drum (diameter 30.5 mm) |
| 50 mm | Transfer Roller (diameter 16 mm) |
| 117.8 mm | Fusing Roller (diameter 37.5 mm) |
| 113 mm | Pressure Roller(diameter 36 mm) |

ENERGY SAVING

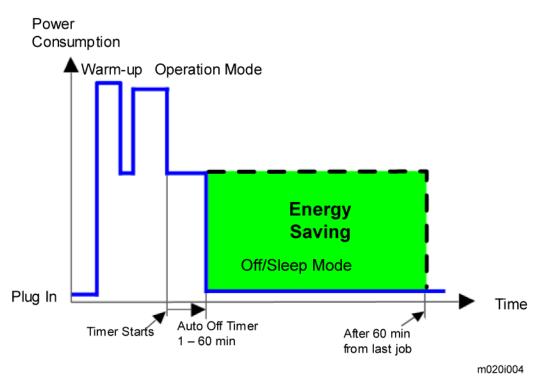
| REVISION HISTORY | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--|------|--|--|--|
| Page Date Added/Updated/New | | | | | |
| | | None | | | |

7. ENERGY SAVING

7.1 ENERGY SAVE

7.1.1 ENERGY SAVER MODES

Customers should use energy saver modes properly, to save energy and protect the environment.



When the machine is not being used, the machine enters energy saver mode to reduce the power consumption by turning off the LCD of the operation panel and lowering the fusing temperature.

The green area in this diagram represents the amount of energy that is saved when the timers are at the default settings. If the timers are changed, then the energy saved will be different. For example, if the timers are all set to 60 minutes, the enclosed area will disappear, and no energy is saved before 60 minutes expires.

Power consumption during warm-up may be much higher than shown in this diagram.

Energy Saving

Timer Settings

- The user can set this timer with the menu mode (p.5-112).
- 1. Press [Menu].
- 2. Press $[\mathbf{\nabla}]$ or $[\mathbf{\Delta}]$ to scroll through the menu listing and press [OK] to select.
- 3. [System] > [Auto Off] > [Auto Off On/Off] > [On]
- 4. [System] > [Auto Off] > [Auto Off Timer] > [1] , [5], [15], [30], [45], [60] min.
- 5. Press [Escape] to return to the previous menu.
- The default setting of Auto Off is 1 minute.

Return to Stand-by Mode

Off/Sleep Mode

Recovery time.

M020/M021: 20 seconds or less.

Recommendation

We recommend that the default settings should be kept.

- If the customer requests that these settings should be changed, please explain that their energy costs could increase, and that they should consider the effects on the environment of extra energy use.
- If it is necessary to change the settings, please try to make sure that the Auto Off timer is not too long. Try with a shorter setting first, such as 5 minutes, then go to a longer one (such as 15 minutes) if the customer is not satisfied.
- If the timers are all set to the maximum value, the machine will not begin saving energy until 60 minutes has expired after the last job. This means that after the customer has finished using the machine for the day, energy will be consumed that could otherwise be saved.
- If you change the settings, the energy consumed can be measured using SP8941, as explained below.

7.1.2 ENERGY SAVE EFFECTIVENESS

SP 8941 (Machine Status) keeps a record of the amount of time that the machine spends in each mode.

- 8941-001: Operating mode
- 8941-002: Standby mode
- 8941-003: Panel off mode (not used)
- 8941-004: Low power mode (not used)
- 8941-005: Sleep mode

With this data, and the power consumption values from the specifications, we can estimate the amount of energy that is used by the machine.

This should only be used as a reference value, because the power consumption specifications are measured in a controlled environment with a constant power supply.

To get an exact measurement at the customers site, a watt meter must be used to measure the actual energy consumed.

To use SP8941 to calculate the energy consumed:

- At the start of the measurement period, read the values of SP8941 001 to 005.
- At the end of the measurement period, read the values of SP8941 001 to 005 again.
- Find the amount of time spent in each mode (subtract the earlier measurement from the later measurement).
- Multiply this by the power consumption spec for each mode.
- Convert the result to kWh (kilowatt hours)

Here is an example calculation.

| Machine Condition | SP8941: Machine Status | Time at Start (min.) ① | Time at End (min.) ② | Running time (hour) (2-1)/60 = 3 | Power consumption Spec. (W) ④ | Power consumption (KWH) ((3x(4))/1000 = (5) |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|---|
| Operating | 001: Operating Time | 21089.0 | 21386.0 | 4.95 | 898 | 4.45 |
| Stand by (Ready) | 002: Standby Time | 306163.0 | 308046.0 | 31.38 | 179 | 5.62 |
| Sleep | 005: Off Mode Time | 508776.0 | 520377.0 | 193.35 | 1.8 | 0.35 |
| Total | | | | | | 10.42 |

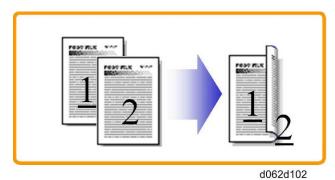
7.2 PAPER SAVE

7.2.1 EFFECTIVENESS OF DUPLEX/COMBINE FUNCTION

Duplexing and the combine functions reduce the amount of paper used. This means that less energy overall is used for paper production, which improves the environment.

1. Duplex

Reduce paper volume in half!



2. Combine mode

Reduce paper volume in half!

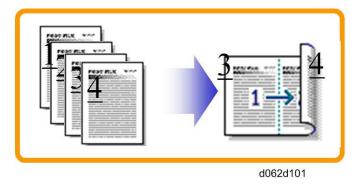
| | PERFIT.X YOU | | 100.000 |
|----------|--------------|----|---------|
| 1 | | 4 | < |
| <u> </u> | ि | 1- | 2 |
| | | | |

d062d100

Energy Saving

3. Duplex + Combine

Using both features together can further reduce paper volume by 3/4!



To check the paper consumption, look at the total counter and the duplex counter.

The total counter counts all pages printed.

- For one duplex page, the total counter goes up by 2.
- For a duplex job of a three-page original, the total counter goes up by 3.

The duplex counter counts pages that have images on both sides.

- For one duplex page, the duplex counter goes up by 1.
- For a duplex job of a three-page original, the duplex counter will only increase by 1, even though two sheets are used.

How to calculate the paper reduction ratio

How to calculate the paper reduction ratio, when compared with Single-sided copying, with no 2-in-1 combine mode

Paper reduction ratio (%) = Number of sheets reduced: A/Number of printed original images: B x 100

Number of sheets reduced: A

= Output pages in duplex mode/2 + Number of pages in Single-sided with combine mode + Number of pages in Duplex with combine mode x 3/2

 $A = ((2) / 2 + (3) + (4) \times 3 / 2$

Number of printed original images: B

= Total counter + Number of pages in Single-sided with combine mode + Number of pages in Duplex with combine mode

 $\mathsf{B} = (1) + (3) + (4)$

- (1) Total counter: SP 8581 001 (pages)
- (2) Single-sided with duplex mode: SP 8421 001 (pages)
- (3) Single-sided with combine mode: SP 8421 004 (pages)
- (4) Duplex with combine mode: SP 8421 005 (pages)

M020/M021 SERVICE MANUAL APPENDICES

M020/M021 APPENDICES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| 1. APPENDICES: SPECIFICATIONS | 1-1 |
|---|------|
| 1.1 APPENDICES: BASIC SPECIFICATIONS | |
| 1.1.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS | |
| 1.1.2 EXTERNAL OPTIONS | |
| 1.1.3 PAPER SIZES | |
| Plain Paper | |
| Envelope | |
| Custom | |
| Envelopes | |
| 1.1.4 OPERATING ENVIRONMENT | |
| 1.1.5 OPERATION PANEL LED SPECIFICATIONS | |
| 1.2 APPENDICES: CONTROLLER SPECIFICATIONS | 1-10 |
| 1.2.1 CONTROLLER BOARD | 1-10 |
| 1.2.2 PRINTING FUNCTIONS | 1-11 |
| 1.2.3 PRINTER DRIVERS | 1-11 |
| 1.2.4 SUPPORTED ENVIRONMENTS | |
| Windows Environments | 1-13 |
| Mac OS Environments | 1-14 |
| UNIX Environment | 1-15 |
| Novell Netware | 1-15 |
| SAP R/3 Environment | 1-16 |
| 1.2.5 CONTROLLER INTERFACE SPECIFICATIONS | 1-17 |
| 1.2.6 SUPPORTED UTILITIES | 1-18 |
| Bundled Utilities | |
| Optional Utilties | |
| 2. APPENDICES: PM TABLES | 2-1 |
| 2.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES | |
| 2.1.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ITEMS | |

| Mainframe | 2-1 |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| 2.1.2 OTHER YIELD PARTS | 2-2 |
| One-tray Paper Feed Unit (M386/M389) | 2-2 |

APPENDIX:

SPECIFICATIONS

| REVISION HISTORY | | | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Page | Page Date Added/Updated/New | | | | | |
| | | None | | | | |

1. APPENDICES: SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 APPENDICES: BASIC SPECIFICATIONS

1.1.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

| Туре | Desktop | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| Technology | | Laser beam scanning and mono-component development electro-photographic printing | | | | | |
| Operation Panel | | 4-line display (4 lines x 32 characters/line) 22 keys, 4 LEDs | | | | | |
| Resolution (dpi) | 1,200 x 600 dpi, 60 | 00 x 600 dpi | | | | | |
| Printing Speed | 45/50 ppm (A4 - S | 45/50 ppm (A4 - SEF), 47/52 ppm (LT - SEF) | | | | | |
| First Print | 7.5 sec or less (A4/LT, SEF, Std. Tray) | | | | | | |
| Dimensions (WxDxH) | 410 x 435 x 400 mm 16.2 x 17.1 x 15.8 in. | | | | | | |
| Weight | Approx. 25 kg / 55 | lb. (with std. tray | and AIO) | | | | |
| | Oten dend | Std Tray | 550 sheets (80g/m ² , 20lb.) | | | | |
| | Standard | By-pass tray | 100 sheets (80g/m ² , 20lb.) | | | | |
| Input capacity | Op. Paper Tray | PFU | 550 sheets x 4 (80g/m ² , 20lb.) | | | | |
| | Max | 2850 sheets (80 |)g/m², 20lb) | | | | |
| Output capacity | Standard Tray Face down | 500 sheets (A4/LT, 80g/m ² , 20lb) | | | | | |

| | Std. Tray | | EF-A6 SEF, LG SEF-A5 SEFB, Width 98 to mm - Length 140 to 356 mm | | | |
|------------------|--|--------|--|--|--|--|
| | | (Wid | th 3.9 to 8.5 in - Length 5.6 to 14 in.) | | | |
| Input Paper Size | Bypass Tray | 216 | EF-A6 SEF, LG SEF-A6 SEF, Width 64 to mm - Length 140 to 900 mm th 2.6 to 8.5 in - Length 5.6 to 14 in.) | | | |
| | Opt. Tray | 216 | EF-A5 SEF, LG SEF-A5 SEF, Width 98 to mm - Length 160 to 356 mm th 3.9 to 8.5 in - Length 6.3 to 14 in.) | | | |
| Madia Turaa | Std./Opt. Tray, Duplex Unit | | n Paper, Thick Paper, Recycled Paper, elope | | | |
| Media Type | By-pass tray | | in Paper, Thick Paper, Transparency, cycled Paper, Envelope | | | |
| | Standard Tray | 52 - | 52 - 220 g/m², 14 - 59 lb. | | | |
| | Op. Paper Tray | 52 - | 52 - 220 g/m², 14 - 59 lb. | | | |
| Paper Weight | By-pass tray | 52 - | 220 g/m², 14 - 59 lb. | | | |
| | Duplex tray | 60 - | 60 - 163 g/m², 16 - 43 lb. | | | |
| Warm-up Time | 20 sec or less (at | 23 deg | ı. C / 71.6 deg. F, no errors) | | | |
| | Toner (AIO) | 25 k | 25 k prints. Starter: 6 k prints | | | |
| | Maint. Kit | 120 | k prints | | | |
| Target Yield | Note: 1) An A4 (8.5"x11")/ 5% Chart is used to measure the above yie 2) The condition is standard temperature and humidity. 3) This yield number may change depending on the circumstance and printing conditions. | | | | | |
| Environment | Off sleep mode | | 1 min (default) | | | |
| Safety Standard | | | IS: UL60950, CUL U: CE Marking, TUV(EN60950) | | | |

Appendix: pecifications

| Environmental Standard | | US: Energy Star EU: BAM specifications | | |
|------------------------|---------|---|--|--|
| Total counter | | Electric Counter | | |
| @Remote | | Supported | | |
| HDD | | 80 GB (M020 option, M021 standard) | | |
| Standard | | 256 MB (M020)/ 768 MB (M021) | | |
| RAM | Maximum | 768 MB | | |

1.1.2 EXTERNAL OPTIONS

| Paper Tray (550 x1) witho | Paper Tray (550 x1) without casters | | | | |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Paper Size | A4 SEF-A5 SEF, LG SEF-A5 SEF | | | | |
| Paper Weight | 52 - 220g/m ^{2,} 14 - 59 lb. | | | | |
| Paper capacity | 550 sheets | | | | |
| Dimensions(w x d x h) (without protuberances) | 400 x 445 x 150 mm (15.7 x 17.5 x 5.9 in.) | | | | |
| Weight | 7.0 kg or less, 15.5 lb. or less | | | | |
| Paper Tray (550 x 1) with | casters | | | | |
| Paper Size | A4 SEF-A5 SEF, LG SEF-A5 SEF | | | | |
| Paper Weight | 52 – 220 g/m ^{2,} 14 - 59 lb. | | | | |
| Paper capacity | 550 sheets | | | | |
| Dimensions(w x d x h) (without protuberances) | 400 x 445 x 215 mm (29.7 x 28.6 x 8.5 in.) | | | | |
| Weight | 8.0 kg or less, 17.7 lb. or less | | | | |

1.1.3 PAPER SIZES

Plain Paper

| Туре | Orient | Size | Std. Tray | Opt. Tray | Bypass | Env. Feed | Dup. |
|----------|--------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------|--------------|------|
| A4 | SEF | 210x297 mm | А | А | В | N | А |
| B5 | SEF | 182x257 mm | A | А | В | N | А |
| A5 | SEF | 148x210 mm | A (NA: B) | A (NA: B) | В | N | A |
| | LEF | 210x148 mm | В | Ν | В | Ν | Ν |
| B6 | SEF | 128x182 mm | В | В | В | N | А |
| A6 | SEF | 105x148 mm | В | Ν | В | Ν | Ν |
| Legal | SEF | 8 1/2"x14" mm | A | A | В | N | А |
| Letter | SEF | 8 1/2"x11" mm | A | А | В | Ν | А |
| HLT | SEF | 5 1/2" x 8 1/2" | B (NA: A) | B (NA: A) | В | N | A |
| | LEF | 5 1/2" x 8 1/2" | В | Ν | В | Ν | Ν |
| Exec | SEF | 7 1/4"x10 1/2" | В | В | В | Ν | А |
| F | SEF | 8" x 13" | В | В | В | N | А |
| Foolscap | SEF | 8 1/2" x 13" | В | В | В | Ν | А |
| Folio | SEF | 8 1/4" x 13" | В | В | В | Ν | А |

Envelope

| Туре | Orient | Size | Std. Tray | Opt. Tray | Bypass | Env. Feed | Dup. |
|---------|--------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------|--------------|------|
| Com10 | SEF | 4 1/8" x 9 1/2" | В | В | В | А | Ν |
| Monarch | SEF | 3 7/8" x 7 1/2" | В | В | В | А | Ν |
| C6 | SEF | 114 x 162 mm | В | В | В | А | Ν |
| C5 | SEF | 162 x 229 mm | В | В | В | А | Ν |
| DL Env | SEF | 110 x 220 mm | В | В | В | А | Ν |

Custom

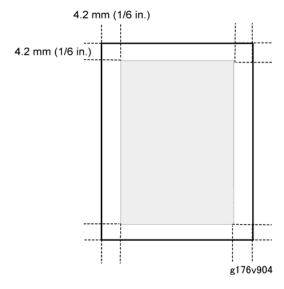
| | | Std. Tray | Opt. Tray | Bypass | Env. Feed | Dup. |
|--------|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------|--------------|------|
| Width | 98-216 mm (3.8-8.5 in.) | В | В | / | N | Ν |
| Length | 140-356 mm (5.5-14 in.) | В | N | / | N | Ν |
| | 160-356 mm (6.3-14 in.) | N | В | N | N | А |
| Width | 64-216 mm (2.5-8.5 in.) | / | / | В | N | Ν |
| Length | 140-900 mm (5.5-35 in.) | / | / | В | N | Ν |

Papers:

| А | Supported and the size is automatically detected. | | | |
|---|---|--|--|--|
| В | Need to input paper size by operation panel and driver. | | | |
| С | Need to specify the paper size by the SP mode. | | | |
| N | Not supported. | | | |
| / | Does not apply | | | |

Duplex:

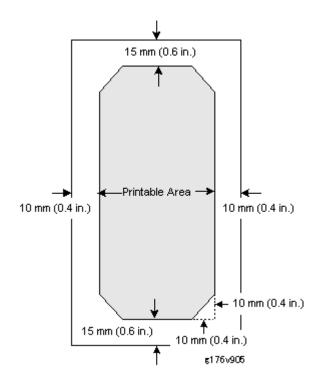
| А | Paper feed possible |
|---|-----------------------|
| Ν | Paper feed impossible |

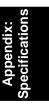


Vote Note

• The printable area may vary depending on paper size, printer language and printer driver settings.

Envelopes





1.1.4 OPERATING ENVIRONMENT

| Power Source | North America: 120 -127 V, 60 Hz 11 A or less | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Power Source | Europe: 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz 6 A or less | | | | | |
| | Maximum | Main Unit | Full System | | | |
| Power Consumption | Maximum | 1,400 W or less | 1,400 W or less | | | |
| | Off/Sleep mode | 5 W or less | 5 W or less | | | |
| | Printing | M020: 71.8 dB or less M021: 72 dB or less | M020: 75.8 dB or less M021: 76 dB or less | | | |
| Noise Emission | Standby | M020: 46.5 dB or less M021: 48 dB or less | M020: 46.5 dB or less M021: 48 dB or less | | | |
| Sound Pressure Level | Printing | M020: 65.8 dB or less M021: 66 dB or less | M020: 69.8 dB or less M021: 70 dB or less | | | |
| (All Models) (Operating Position) | Standby | M020: 40.5 dB or less M021: 42 dB or less | M020: 40.5 dB or less M021: 42 dB or less | | | |

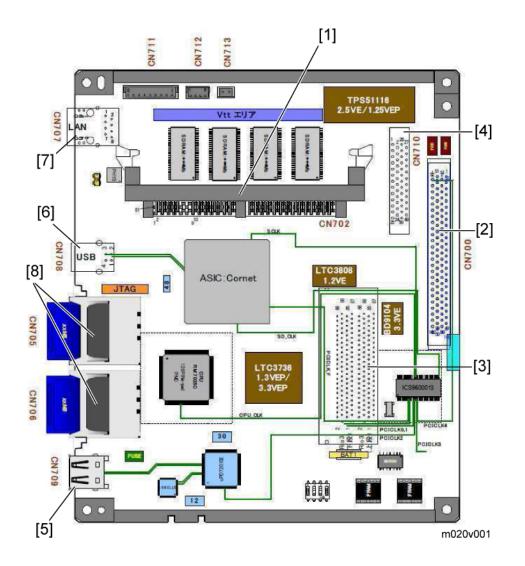
1.1.5 OPERATION PANEL LED SPECIFICATIONS

| LED | Color | Appearance | Meaning |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---|
| | | Off | Power off or in Energy Saver mode |
| Power | Blue | Flashing | Warming up |
| | | On | Power on and not in Energy Saver mode |
| | | Off | No data |
| Data In | Blue | Flashing | Data being received or processed or the printer is spooling |
| | | On | Data being received or processed; more data coming |
| Cuerered/Decurren | Dhue | Off | Ready to print |
| Suspend/Resume | Blue | On | Suspend |
| | | | No messages or error conditions requiring attention |
| Error | Red / yellow | Red On | Printing is not possible, or printing quality cannot be ensured |
| | | Yellow Flashing | Printer requires service |

M020/M021

1.2 APPENDICES: CONTROLLER SPECIFICATIONS

1.2.1 CONTROLLER BOARD



- 1. DDR DIMM I/F
- 2. Engine I/F
- 3. PCI Option
- 4. HDD I/F
- 5. USB Host I/F
- 6. USB I/F
- 7. LAN I/F
- 8. SD Card I/F (Slots x2)

1.2.2 PRINTING FUNCTIONS

| Job Spool | Y |
|--------------------------|---|
| Adjustment Registration | Y |
| Adjustment Image Density | Y |
| * With HDD | |

1.2.3 PRINTER DRIVERS

SM Appendix

| | | PCL5e | PostScript3 | | | |
|-----------------------------|------|-------|-------------|-----------------------|-----|-----|
| | PCL6 | | Windows | Мас | | |
| ltem | | | XP/ Vista/7 | OS 8.6 or later | OSX | XPS |
| Job Binding | N | N | N | N | N | Ν |
| Send to Document Server | N | N | N | N | N | Ν |
| Sample Print | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Locked Print | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Reduce/Enlarge (Scaling) | N | N | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Reduce/Enlarge Centering | Y | Y | N | N | N | Ν |
| Collate | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Layout (N-up) | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Poster | N | N | N | Y | N | N |
| Duplex | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |

Appendices: Controller Specifications

| Punch | Ν | Ν | N | Ν | Ν | Ν |
|------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Staple | Ν | N | N | Ν | N | N |
| Front Cover Sheet | Y | Y | N | Y | Y | N |
| Front and Back Cover Sheets | Ν | N | N | Ν | N | N |
| Slip Sheet | Y | Y | N | Ν | N | Y |
| Chaptering (Page Layout) | Ν | N | Ν | Ν | N | N |
| Chaptering (Single Page Insert) | Ν | N | N | Ν | N | N |
| Chaptering (Page Block Insert) | Ν | N | Ν | Ν | N | N |
| User Defined Pages | Ν | Y | N | N | N | N |
| Tab Stock Printing | Ν | N | Ν | N | N | N |
| Mirror Image Print | Ν | N | Y | N | N | N |
| Negative Image Print | Ν | N | Y | N | N | N |
| Dithering | Ν | N | Y | Y | Y | N |
| Edge Smoothing | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | N |
| Toner Saving | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Watermark | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | N |
| Form Overlay | Ν | N | N | N | N | N |
| Header/Footer | Ν | N | N | Ν | N | N |
| Adjust image position | Ν | N | Ν | Ν | N | N |
| Binding Margins | Ν | N | N | Ν | N | N |
| User ID | Y | Y | Y | Ν | N | Y |
| User Code | Y | Y | Y | Ν | N | Y |

Appendix: ecifications

| Rotate Print | Y | Y | Y | Ν | Ν | Y |
|-----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Reverse Order Print | Ν | Ν | Y | Y | Y | Y |
| Do not print Blank pages | Ν | Ζ | Ν | Ν | Ν | Ν |
| Edge to Edge Print | Y | Y | Y | Y | Y | Ν |

1.2.4 SUPPORTED ENVIRONMENTS

Windows Environments

| Windows OS | Туре | PCL5e | PCL6 | PS3 | XPS |
|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|-------------------|----------|-------------------|
| Win XP | Professional | Yes | Yes | Yes *1 | No |
| | Home Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes *1 | No |
| | Standard Ed. | Yes* ² | Yes* ² | Yes *1*2 | No |
| Win Server | Enterprise Ed. | Yes* ² | Yes* ² | Yes *1*2 | No |
| 2003/2003R2 | Datacenter Ed. | No | No | No | No |
| | Web Ed. | No | No | No | No |
| | Home Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes* ³ |
| | Premium Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes* ³ |
| Vista | Business Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes* ³ |
| | Enterprise Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes* ³ |
| | Ultimate Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes* ³ |
| | Standard Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Win Server2008 | Enterprise Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | Datacenter Ed. | No | No | No | No |
| Win | Standard Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |

Appendices: Controller Specifications

| Server2008 | Enterprise Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
|------------|------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| R2 | Datacenter Ed. | No | No | No | No |
| | Home Ed. | No | No | No | No |
| | Starter Ed. | No | No | No | No |
| Win 7 | Premium Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | Professional Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | Enterprise Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| | Ultimate Ed. | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |

Notes

| *1 | Adobe does not release PS driver for Windows XP. Only MS-PostScript driver is available and PPD file for MS-PS is included in the Driver CD. | | | | |
|----|--|--|--|--|--|
| *2 | Cluster function is not supported. | | | | |
| *3 | Service Pack 1 or later is recomended | | | | |

Mac OS Environments

| Mac OS | PS3 | Printer Utility for MAC |
|---------------------------------------|-----|-------------------------|
| Mac OS 8.6 - 9.2.X (OS X Classic) | Y | Y |
| Mac OS X Native (v. 10.1 or Later) *1 | Y | Y* ² |

Notes

- *1 Mac OS X v.10.0.X is not supported. Plug-in function for "Sample Print", "Locked Print" and "User Code" is supported from Mac OS X 10.2 and later.
- *2 Mac OS X v.10.2.0 is not supported.

| Supported Platforms | Network Installation | Device Option Support* | | |
|--|--|------------------------------------|--|--|
| Sun Solaris | 2.6 / 7 / 8/ 9 /10 | 2.6 / 7 / 8/ 9 / 10 | | |
| HP-UX | 10.X / 11.X / 11iv2 | 10.X / 11.X / 11iv2 | | |
| SCO OpenServer | 5.07 , 6.0 | 5.07 , 6.0 | | |
| RedHat Linux | 6.X / 7.X / 8.X / 9.X / Enterprise | 6.X / 7.X / 8.X / 9.X / Enterprise | | |
| IBM AIX | V4.3 / 5L V5.1 / 5L V5.2 / 5 L V5.3 | V4.3 / 5L V5.1 /5L V5.2 / 5L V5.3 | | |
| Data Stream | PostScript, PCL, ASCII | | | |
| Localization | English only | | | |
| * Device Option feature is not supported in PCL. | | | | |

UNIX Environment

Novell Netware

| Netware Server | Supported Version | Netware 3.12, 3.2, 4.1, 4.11, 5.0, 5.1, 6, 6.5 |
|------------------------------|------------------------|---|
| | Client OS | Windows XP(professional) /Vista |
| | Supported Server OS | NetWare 5.1 with SP7 or later, 6.0 with SP4 or later, 6.5 |
| NDPS Gateway (V4 Release) | Supported Client OS | Microsoft Windows XP Professional with Novell Client 4.83 or later *Windows XP Home Edition is not supported since Novell Client does not support this OS. |
| | Localization | English, German, French, Italian, Spanish |

SAP R/3 Environment

| | R/3 version | 3.x or later (4.x = Supported, 3.x, 6.x = Compatible) | |
|--|--|--|--|
| | Platform | Independent | |
| Supported environment | PDL | PCL5e | |
| | Character Set | Latin 1(Western European), Latin 2 (Eastern European) | |
| | Localization | English only | |
| Supported features | i.e: Input/Output Bin, Duplex, Stapling, Punching, Resolution, Collation, EconoMode/TonerSaving, Smoothing, Page Protect, Auto Tray Change/Opt Tray select | | |
| Supported Barcode & OCR Fonts* | | Code 128, Code 39, Code 93, Codebar, 2 of 5 interleaved/Industrial/Matrix, MSI, USPS, UPC/EAN | |
| | OCR Fonts | OCR A, OCR B | |
| * Need to purchase Barcode & OCR Package | | | |

cations

1.2.5 CONTROLLER INTERFACE SPECIFICATIONS

| Network Interface (Standard) | | | | |
|---------------------------------|--|--|--|--|
| Data Transmission Speed | 10M bps, 100 Mbps | | | |
| Protocol | TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, Bonjour | | | |
| Supported OS | Windows XP/Vista/7, Windows Server2003/2003R2/2008, Mac OS | | | |
| Distance between devices | 100m | | | |
| USB 2.0 Interface (Standard) | | | | |
| Data Transmission Speed | 480 Mbps (High Speed:USB 2.0), 12 Mbps (Full Speed) | | | |
| Supported OS | Windows XP/Vista/7 | | | |
| IEEE 1284 Interface (Option) | | | | |
| Data Transmission Speed | Compatible/Nibble/Byte/ECP mode | | | |
| Supported OS | Windows XP/Vista/7/Server2003, Mac OS | | | |
| Distance between devices | 2.5m | | | |
| Wireless LAN Interface (Option) | | | | |
| Data Transmission Speed | 11 Mbps, 5.5 Mbps, 2 Mbps, 1 Mbps | | | |
| Protocol | TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, SMB, AppleTalk | | | |
| Supported OS | Windows XP/Vista/7, Windows Server2003/2003R2/2008, Mac OS | | | |
| Distance between devices | 140m (11M bps), 200m (5.5 Mbps), 270 m (2 Mbps), 400 m (1 Mbps) | | | |
| Frequency | From 2,400 MHz to 2,497 MHz | | | |
| Channel | 1-11 ch (US model), 1-13 ch (EU model) | | | |
| Type of connection | Ad hoc mode, 802.11b Ad hoc mode, Infrastructure mode, WPA | | | |

| Gigabit Ethernet (Option) | | |
|---------------------------|---|--|
| Data Transmission Speed | 10M bps, 100 Mbps, 1000 Mbps | |
| Protocol | TCP/IP, IPX/SPX, SMB, AppleTalk | |
| Supported OS | Windows XP/Vista/7, Windows Server2003/2003R2/2008, Mac OS | |
| Distance between devices | 100m | |

1.2.6 SUPPORTED UTILITIES

Bundled Utilities

| No. | Utility Name | Supported? |
|-----|---------------------------------------|------------|
| 1 | Printer Utility for Mac | No |
| 2 | Font Manager 2000 | YES |
| 3 | WebImageMonitor (embedded web server) | YES |

Optional Utilties

| No. | Utility Name | Supported? |
|-----|--|------------|
| 1 | DeskTopBinder Lt | YES |
| 2 | Remote Communication Gate S Pro | YES |
| 3 | Smart Device Monitor for Admin Accounting Report Pack | YES |

Appendices: Controller Specifications

APPENDIX: PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE TABLES

| REVISION HISTORY | | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|------|--|
| Page | Page Date Added/Updated/New | | |
| | | None | |

2. APPENDICES: PM TABLES

2.1 MAINTENANCE TABLES

2.1.1 PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ITEMS

To enable the machine for maintenance by the service technician, the meter-charge mode must be set to "enabled" with SP5930 and "0: Service" with SP5-067-001.

The table below shows the PM items serviced by the service technician.

After completing a PM procedure, reset the PM counter for the replaced part with SP7-804.

Mainframe

Paper Chart: A4 (LT)/5% Mode: 2 copies / original (prints/job) Ratio 25% Environment: Normal temperature and humidity

Yield may change depending on circumstances and print conditions.

Symbol keys: C: Clean, R: Replace, L: Lubricant, I: Inspect

| Item | 6/25 K | 120 K | EM | Remarks |
|---------------------|------------|-------|----|------------|
| PCDU | | | | |
| AIO | R | - | - | |
| Transfer | | | - | |
| Transfer Roller | - | R | - | |
| Fusing | | | | |
| Fusing Unit | - | R | - | |
| Paper Path | Paper Path | | | |
| Paper Feed Roller | - | R | С | Damp cloth |
| Friction Pad | - | R | С | Dry cloth |
| Registration Roller | - | - | С | Damp cloth |

| Item | 6/25 K | 120 K | EM | Remarks |
|-------------------|--------|-------|----|--------------------------|
| Dust Shield Glass | - | - | С | Optical cloth, Blower |

2.1.2 OTHER YIELD PARTS

The parts mentioned in these tables have a target yield. However, the total copy/print volume made by the machine will not reach the target yield within the machine's targeted lifetime if the machine is used under the target usage conditions (ACV, color ratio, P/J, and C/O). So, these parts are categorized not as PM parts but as yield parts (EM parts).

One-tray Paper Feed Unit (M386/M389)

| ltem | EM | Remarks |
|-------------------|----|--------------|
| Feed Roller | С | Dry cloth |
| Separation Roller | С | Dry cloth |
| Pick-up Roller | С | Dry cloth |
| Relay Roller | С | Damp cloth |
| Bottom Plate Pad | С | Damp cloth |
| Sensors | С | Blower brush |